



## **Appendix A:**

# **Final form of the SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds, Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and Unlisted Structured Investment Products**

---



SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION  
證券及期貨事務監察委員會

**SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds,  
Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and  
Unlisted Structured Investment Products**

[Date]



# Table of Contents

## Chapter

### Section I: Overarching Principles Section

1	Preliminary
2	Administrative arrangements
3	General principles
4	Product <del>p</del> roviders
5	General requirements
6	Disclosure requirements
7	Ongoing monitoring of the product and information to investors

### Section II: Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds

1	Authorization procedures
2	Products Advisory Committee
3	Interpretation
4	Trustee/ <del>C</del> ustodian
5	Management company and auditor
6	Operational requirements
7	Investment: core requirements
8	Specialized schemes
9	Additional requirements for non-Hong Kong based schemes
10	Operational matters
11	Documentation and reporting
Appendix A1	(deleted)
Appendix A2	(deleted)
Appendix B	(deleted)
Appendix C	Information to be disclosed in the offering document
Appendix D	Contents of the constitutive documents
Appendix E	Contents of financial reports
Appendix F	(deleted)
Appendix G	Guidelines for review of internal controls and systems of trustees/custodians
Appendix H	Guidelines on hedge funds reporting requirements
Appendix I	Guidelines for regulating index tracking exchange traded funds

### Section III: Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes

1	Authorization procedures
2	Administrative arrangements
3	Interpretation
4	Applicant company
5	Operational requirements

---



6	Guarantee and with-profits <u>or similar</u> features
7	Post-authorization requirements
Appendix A	Information to be disclosed in the principal brochure
Appendix B	Contents of the constitutive documents

#### **Section IV: Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products**

1	Application of code and authorization procedures
2	Interpretation
3	Issuers and guarantors
4	Product arrangers
5	Product structure
6	Offering documents and advertisements
7	Post-sale continuing obligations
<u>8</u>	<u>Issuer to provide for cooling-off or unwind right</u>
Appendix A	Core requirements
Appendix B	Requirements for trustees/custodians appointed in relation to unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products
Appendix C	Information to be disclosed in offering documents for unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products
Appendix D	Advertising guidelines applicable to unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products

---



## **Section I:**

# **Overarching Principles Section**

**(as marked up against the proposed Overarching Principles Section to reflect amendments made following the public consultation)**



# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1: Preliminary</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Administrative arrangements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 3: General principles</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Product Providers</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>General duties and obligations</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Conflicts of interest</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 5: General requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Name of product</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Selection of distributors</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Engagement of counterparties and appointment of service providers</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Language</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 6: Disclosure requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>General obligations</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Offering documents</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Product Key Facts Statements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Advertisements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Use of disclaimers</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 7: Ongoing monitoring of the product and information to investors</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Ongoing disclosure</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Issue of advertisements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Investor education</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Enquiries and complaints handling</b>	<b>[•]</b>



## **Section I: Overarching Principles Section**

### **Chapter 1: Preliminary**

#### **Introduction to the Handbook**

- 1.1 The Handbook is made under section 399 of the SFO and establishes codes or guidelines for the authorization of products covered by the Handbook and their offering documents and advertisements. These guidelines are not intended to be exhaustive.
- 1.2 Section I of the Handbook sets out the high-level principles and requirements that are intended to apply to all products. More detailed product-specific requirements applicable to specific types of products are contained in the applicable product code.
- 1.3 The Handbook provides general guidelines for authorization of products specifically stated in the applicable product codes. The Commission will have regard to both the spirit as well as the letter of the General Principles set out in Chapter 3 of this Overarching Principles Section in considering products authorization applications and whether products should remain authorized.
- 1.4 All products, their Product Providers and the Specified Entities are expected to comply with all applicable principles and requirements set out in Section I of the Handbook in addition to the detailed product-specific requirements applicable to specific types of products that are contained in the applicable product code.
- 1.5 The Handbook does not have the force of law and shall not be interpreted in a way that will override the provision of any law.

#### **Effect of breach of the Handbook**

- 1.6 Failure by any person to comply with any applicable provision of the Handbook:
  - (a) shall not by itself render the person liable to any judicial or other proceedings, but in any proceedings under the SFO before any court, the Handbook may be admissible in evidence, and if any provision set out in the Handbook appears to the court to be relevant to any question arising in the proceedings, it may be taken into account in determining the question;
  - (b) may cause the Commission to consider whether such failure adversely reflects on the person's fitness and properness (in so far as the relevant person is licensed or registered under the SFO and its obligations are stated in the Handbook);
  - (c) may cause the Commission to consider whether such failure adversely reflects on whether the product, the offering document and/or the advertisements should remain authorized;
  - (d) may cause the Commission to consider whether such failure adversely reflects on whether further products issued, managed and/or originated by such person, and/or offering documents and advertisements in relation to such products, should be granted authorization in the interest of the investing public (i.e. where there is a serious breach, the Commission may refuse to authorize new products issued, managed and/or originated by the person in breach and/or offering



documents and advertisements in relation to such products for a stated period);  
and

- (e) may cause the Commission to impose additional authorization condition(s) which may include restricting the further offering of the product to the public.

## Interpretation

1.7 Unless otherwise stated, the following words and expressions shall have the following meaning throughout Section I of the Handbook:

- (a) “applicable product code” means the UT Code in the case of unit trusts/mutual funds, the ILAS Code in the case of ILAS or the SIP Code in the case of structured investment products;
- (b) “Commission” or “SFC” means the Securities and Futures Commission referred to in section 3(1) of the SFO;
- (c) “counterparties” means, where applicable, the other parties in the structure of a product including guarantors, other protection writers, swap counterparties, prime brokers and includes s those bearing similar meaning within each of the applicable product codes;
- (d) “Handbook” means the entire SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds, Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and Unlisted Structured Investment Products including this Overarching Principles Section, the UT Code, the ILAS Code and the SIP Code;
- (e) “ILAS” means investment-linked assurance schemes that are subject to the ILAS Code;
- (f) “ILAS Code” means the Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes administered by the Commission as set out in Section III of the Handbook;
- (g) “investor(s)” shall include, for the purpose of reference only, investors in the case of unit trusts/mutual funds and structured investment products and scheme participants/prospective scheme participants in the case of ILAS;
- (h) “offering document” means, as the case may be, the offering document as defined in the applicable product code in respect of the relevant products;
- (i) “products” means any unit trusts/mutual funds, ILAS or structured investment products being offered to the Hong Kong public;
- (j) “Product Provider(s)” means s in their respective contexts, the issuer of a structured investment product; the management company of a unit trust/mutual fund and the unit trust/mutual fund itself and (where unit trust/mutual fund is in the nature of a mutual fund corporation) its board of directors; and the insurance company issuing an ILAS;
- (k) “service providers” means persons which provide services in respect of the product including credit rating agencies, trustees/custodians, valuation agents, administrators, index sponsors and calculating agents;





- (l) “SFO” means the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Chapter 571 of the Laws of Hong Kong);
- (m) “SIP Code” means the Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products administered by the Commission as set out in Section IV of the Handbook;
- (n) “Specified Entity” means a counterparty or service provider whose role and responsibilities with respect to a product have been specified in the applicable product code;
- (o) “structured investment products” has the meaning ascribed to it in the SIP Code;
- (p) “unit trust(s)/mutual fund(s)” means collective investment scheme(s) commonly regarded as unit trusts or mutual funds that are subject to the UT Code; and
- (q) “UT Code” means the Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds administered by the Commission as set out in Section II of the Handbook.

### **SFC’s authorization**

- 1.8 Nothing in the Handbook shall be interpreted in a manner that alters or imposes any restriction upon the exercise by the Commission of any power or discretion conferred upon it under the SFO.
- 1.9 The Commission may at any time pursuant to the SFO review its authorization and may modify, add to or withdraw any of the conditions of such authorization, or withdraw the authorization, as it considers appropriate.
- 1.10 Where a product is described as having been authorized by the Commission, it shall be stated that authorization does not imply official recommendation by adding a prominent note in the following terms to the offering document and advertisement and other invitations to invest in a scheme/the product:  
  
*Note: SFC authorization is not a recommendation or endorsement of a product nor does it guarantee the commercial merits of a product or its performance. It does not mean the product is suitable for all investors nor is it an endorsement of its suitability for any particular investor or class of investors.*
- 1.11 The SFC takes no responsibility for the contents of any offering documents or advertisements authorized by it. Product Providers are reminded that in granting authorization, the SFC relies on the representations made and information provided by the Product Provider and/or its representatives or agents in support of the authorization application. The making of any false or misleading representation and/or the provision of any false or misleading information by such person may amount to an offence under the SFO.
- 1.12 Product Providers are also reminded that SFC authorization does not imply that the SFO, or any other legal or regulatory requirements, have been complied with. Nothing in respect of an authorization may be taken as preventing the SFC from taking any action against any parties for breach of the SFO, or any other legal or regulatory requirements.
- 1.13 It is the SFC’s policy intent that products offered to the public in Hong Kong are subject to the prior authorization of the SFC unless an exemption applies to their offering



documents or advertisements. Given an unauthorized product is not required to comply with the requirements set out in the Handbook, the SFC would not generally consider it appropriate to authorize any advertisement, invitation or document in respect of such unauthorized product under section 105 of the SFO.

- 1.14 Authorization of a product under the SFO would normally be granted together with the authorization of its offering document(s) under section 105 of the SFO. It is the general policy of the Commission not to consider authorizing a product under the SFO alone without a concurrent authorization of its offering document(s).

*Note: For the avoidance of doubt, references to “authorization of products” or terms to the same effect in the Handbook are applicable to products which may be authorized by the SFC under Part IV of the SFO. Upon the legislative amendments pursuant to the consultation on the “Possible Reforms to the Prospectus Regime in the Companies Ordinance and the Offers of Investments Regime in the Securities and Futures Ordinance” issued by the SFC in October 2009 becoming effective, such products shall include structured investment products.*



## Chapter 2: Administrative arrangements

### Products Advisory Committee

- 2.1 According to section 8 of the SFO, the Commission is empowered to set up committees whether for advisory or other purposes. The Commission will establish a Products Advisory Committee for the purpose of consultation and advice on matters that may relate to the Handbook. The remit of the Products Advisory Committee and its membership shall be laid down in its terms of reference.
- 2.2 For the avoidance of doubt, the function of the Products Advisory Committee will be purely advisory in nature. It will not be vested with any of the powers exercisable by the SFC under the applicable sections of the SFO for authorization of products and their offering documents and advertisements.

### Data privacy

- 2.3 The information requested under the Handbook may result in the applicant providing the Commission with personal data as defined in the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance. The data supplied will only be used by the Commission to perform its functions, in the course of which it may match, compare, transfer or exchange personal data with data held or obtained by the Commission, government bodies, other regulatory authorities, corporations, organisations or individuals in Hong Kong or overseas for the purpose of verifying those data. Subject to the limits in sections 378 of the SFO, the Commission may disclose personal data to other regulatory bodies. Persons who have supplied data to the Commission under the Handbook may be entitled under the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance to request access to or to request the correction of any data supplied to the Commission, in the manner and subject to the limitations prescribed. All enquiries shall be directed to the Data Privacy Officer at the SFC.



## Chapter 3: General principles

3.1 In formulating the principles in Section I of the Handbook, the Commission has taken into account principles developed by the International Organisation of Securities Commissions and other principles that the Commission believes to be fundamental for the regulation of products generally offered to the public covered under the Handbook.

3.2 Product Providers shall comply with the spirit of these principles in administering, managing or dealing with any matters relating to the issue, advertising and operation of products.

### **GP1. Acting fairly**

3.3 Product Providers shall act honestly, fairly and professionally.

### **GP2. Disclosure**

3.4 Disclosure shall be complete, accurate and fair, and be written and presented in a clear, concise and effective manner and in such manner as to be readily understood by the investing public. Information provided shall not be false or misleading nor be presented in a deceptive or unfair manner. Where ongoing disclosure is required, the relevant information shall be disseminated in a timely and efficient manner.

### **GP3. Proper protection of assets**

3.5 Where assets are specifically required by the applicable product code to be held for the benefit of investors, all such assets shall be properly protected.

### **GP4. Avoidance of conflicts of interest**

3.6 Product Providers, counterparties and service providers shall avoid being placed in a conflicts of interest position that may undermine the interests of the investors of the relevant product.

### **GP5. Regulatory compliance**

3.7 Product Providers shall ensure that all applicable legal and regulatory requirements are complied with and shall respond to requests and enquiries from the regulators in an open and co-operative manner.

### **GP6. Diligence**

3.8 Product Providers shall discharge their functions with due skill, care and diligence.

### **GP7. Marketing**

3.9 Advertisements for a product shall be clear, fair and present a balanced picture with adequate and prominent risk disclosures in compliance with all applicable regulations. Advertisements shall not be false, biased, misleading or deceptive.



## Chapter 4: Product Providers

### General duties and obligations

4.1 The Product Provider shall:

- (a) comply with the applicable provisions of the Handbook;
- (b) respond to any enquiries made by the Commission in relation to the relevant product and the associated matters promptly and in an open and co-operative manner;
- (c) inform the Commission promptly should there be any material breach of the Handbook; and
- (d) use its best endeavours to take appropriate remedial action to rectify any breach of the Handbook promptly.

*Note: The main purpose of such remedial action is to ensure that investors are not being put in a disadvantageous position as a result of the breach and to maintain market integrity.*

### Conflicts of interest

4.2 The Product Provider shall avoid situations where conflicts of interest may arise including any actual or potential conflicts that may arise between different parties in respect of a product. Where such a conflict cannot be avoided, and provided that investors' interests can be sufficiently protected, the conflict shall be managed and minimized by appropriate safeguards, measures and product structure and these measures and safeguards shall be properly disclosed to investors.



## Chapter 5: General requirements

### Name of product

5.1 A product's name shall not be undesirable or misleading.

*Notes: Issuers should consider the following factors before selecting the name for a product:*

- (i) whether it is inconsistent with the nature of the product or the investment objectives or policy of the product;*
- (ii) whether the name of the product would give investors a sense of assurance or security not justified by the underlying features of the product;*
- (iii) whether it might lead investors into thinking or create the impression that persons other than the Product Provider are responsible for the product; and*
- (iv) whether it might lead investors into thinking or create the impression that the Product Provider is not responsible for the product.*

5.2 Where the name of a product includes the word “guaranteed”, “principal protected”, “capital protected” or words with similar meanings, it shall accurately reflect the nature and extent of the guarantee or the capital/principal protection taking into account the impression that such description might give to the investing public.

### Selection of distributors

5.3 The Product Provider shall exercise **due-reasonable** care and diligence in the selection and appointment of distributors for a product, in particular, having regard to whether such distributor is suitably qualified and competent to discharge its obligations properly.

### Engagement of counterparties and appointment of service providers

5.4 The Product Provider shall exercise **due-reasonable** care and diligence in the selection of counterparties and service providers.

5.5 The Product Provider shall satisfy itself, having made due enquiries, that each of the key counterparties and service providers engaged or appointed in respect of the product is competent and has resources to:

- (a) duly discharge its obligations under its terms of engagement or appointment; and
- (b) comply with all relevant requirements set out in applicable product code specifically applicable to such counterparties/service providers.

### Language

5.6 Without prejudice to any requirement under applicable laws, all offering documents shall be written in both the Chinese and English languages, **which shall be of equivalent standing**, unless this requirement is otherwise waived by the Commission.



*Note: In the case of advertisements, issuer of advertisements may choose to issue advertisement in just one language, having in mind the target audience groups.*



## Chapter 6: Disclosure requirements

### General obligations

- 6.1 Disclosure shall be clear and effective and readily understood by the investing public.
- 6.2 Where comparative information ~~is~~ presented, the comparison shall be meaningful and presented in a fair and balanced way. The source of information used for comparison shall be specified, and the key facts and assumptions used to make the comparison shall be included.
- 6.3 Disclosure shall be legible.

### Offering documents

- 6.4 The offering documents shall contain the information necessary for investors to be able to make an informed judgement of the investment and, in particular, shall meet the disclosure requirements required under the applicable product code.

*Notes: (1) All key features and risks of the product shall be highlighted for investors prominently in a succinct manner.*

- (2) Where a product is being offered on a continuous basis, its offering documents shall be updated in accordance with the requirements set out in the applicable product code.*

### Product Key Facts Statements

- 6.5 Product summaries in the form of a Product Key Facts Statement shall be prepared for all products. Save as otherwise provided in the applicable product codes, ~~the~~ Product Key Facts Statement shall be a part of the offering document of the product. Product Key Facts Statements shall be clear, concise and shall be capable of being easily understood by investors.

- 6.6 Product Key Facts Statements shall be prepared in accordance with the principles set out in this chapter.

- 6.7 A Product Key Facts Statement shall highlight key information in respect of the product to investors in a clear, concise and effective manner. A Product Key Facts Statement shall be fairly presented and shall not contain any false or misleading information.

*Notes: (1) A Product Key Facts Statement should contain information that enables investors to comprehend the key features and risks of the product.*

- (2) Product Key Facts Statements shall be concise and kept at a minimal length. As a matter of best practice, it is expected that Product Key Facts Statements should not be more than 4 pages.*

- (3) Product Key Facts Statements shall be prepared in plain, concise and easily-understood language. Legal or financial jargon should be avoided.*





- (4) *Use of simple examples, charts, tables, diagrams and graphics for illustration purposes in a Product Key Facts Statement is encouraged. Use of bold headings and white space should also be considered as this may make the document easier to read and navigate. Information should not be densely packed.*
- (5) *Information in a Product Key Facts Statement shall be presented in a font that is easy to read and highly legible. The font size adopted shall also be reasonably legible taking into account the language used.*
- (6) *Product Key Facts Statements shall be prepared in a format that facilitates comparison with other products.*

6.8 All Product Key Facts Statements shall carry a prominent upfront warning statement on their first page to warn investors that the Product Key Facts Statement is a part of the offering document (where applicable) and they should not invest in the product based on the Product Key Facts Statement alone.

### **Advertisements**

6.9 All advertisements for a product shall comply with the applicable advertising guidelines.

6.10 Advertisements for a product shall:

- (a) not be false, biased, misleading or deceptive;
- (b) be clear, fair and present a balanced picture of the product with adequate and prominent risk disclosures; and
- (c) contain information that is timely and consistent with its offering document.

*Notes: (1) Whilst advertisements are by nature promotional materials to arouse investors' interests in a product, it is essential that advertisements present a balanced picture and are not false or misleading.*

*(2) If visual images are used, they should not divert or mislead investors' focus from the proper consideration of the product.*

*(3) Where the benefits/rewards of a product are stressed, there shall be a balance so that the possible downside is also explained.*

6.11 Advertisements shall not carry any slogan that is exaggerated or unwarranted or slogan that is inconsistent with or unrelated to the nature and risk and return profile of the product.

### **Use of disclaimers**

6.12 Disclaimers may be only used where it is permitted under the applicable product code and any disclaimer used shall be reasonable. Use of disclaimers to exclude or limit the relevant party's obligations towards investors which are otherwise imposed on it at law and/or under other applicable rules, codes or guidelines shall be avoided.



## **Chapter 7: Ongoing monitoring of the product and information to investors**

### **Ongoing disclosure**

- 7.1 Where the applicable product code imposes an ongoing obligation on the Product Provider to keep investors informed of matters affecting investors or to disseminate product-related information on a regular basis, then the Product Provider shall ensure that:
- (a) effective measures are in place for timely dissemination of such information; and
  - (b) it monitors closely those matters required for notification.

### **Issue of advertisements**

- 7.2 Issuers of advertisements shall ensure that prior to its issue, each advertisement in relation to a product shall be subject to a due review process conducted by a competent delegate designated by the senior management of the issuer of the advertisement to ensure that the advertisement complies with the applicable product code. Such delegate shall be duly authorized to issue the advertisement on behalf of the issuer of the advertisement.

### **Investor education**

- 7.3 As a matter of best practice, the Product Provider is encouraged to provide investor education, especially where they are launching products that are new or novel in the Hong Kong market.

### **Enquiries and complaints handling**

- 7.4 Product Providers should provide in their offering documents information regarding how investors' enquiries and complaints will be handled.



## **Section II:**

# **Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds**

**(as marked up against the existing UT Code and highlighted in yellow to reflect further amendments made following the public consultation)**



SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION  
證券及期貨事務監察委員會

## Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds

~~First Second Edition pursuant to the Securities and  
Futures Ordinance (Cap.571)~~

~~April 2003[Date]~~

## AMENDMENT

---

Particulars	Paragraph	Chapter	Effective Date
The Constitution of the Committee On Unit Trusts	2.2	2	6 June 2003
Inspection Regimes		Appendix A2	1 August 2003
Prohibition on Real Estate Investments	7.14	7	22 April 2005
Hedge Fund Guidelines	8.7	8	30 September 2005
Interpretation	3.1A	3	1 August 2008
	3.1B		
	3.11A		
	3.12A		
Operational Requirements for Investment Plans	6.9 (e)	6	1 August 2008
Reporting Requirements for Index Funds	8.6 (f)	8	1 August 2008
Documentation and Reporting	11.1	11	1 August 2008
	11.1A		
	11.1B		
	11.2		
	11.2A		
	11.2B		
	11.3-11.5		
	11.11-11.14		
Guidelines for Regulating Index Tracking Exchange Traded Funds	2, 14, 24-26	Appendix I	1 August 2008

**INSERTION**

—

<b>Particulars</b>	<b>Paragraph</b>	<b>Chapter</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>
Guidelines for Regulating Index Tracking Exchange Traded Funds		Appendix I	24 October 2003

**DELETION**

—

<b>Particulars</b>	<b>Paragraph</b>	<b>Chapter</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>
Advertising Guidelines		Appendix F	1 August 2008

## **Implementation schedule**

The effective date ("Effective Date") of this UT Code is *[to insert date of gazetta]*.

As from the Effective Date, this UT Code will apply to new UT schemes for which applications for authorization are submitted to the Commission on or after the Effective Date.

As for (i) existing SFC-authorized schemes as of the Effective Date which continue to be marketed to the public in Hong Kong thereafter, and (ii) schemes for which applications for authorization were submitted to the Commission prior to the Effective Date (together referred to as "Existing Schemes"), they shall comply with this UT Code unless otherwise set out in the attached table.

Existing Schemes are not mandated to adopt the provisions of the revised UT Code as set out in the "Miscellaneous" section of the attached table. Managers of Existing Schemes may continue to utilize the existing provisions as already set out in the offering and constitutive documents of the schemes.

A transitional period of 12 months from the Effective Date will be provided for Existing Schemes to comply with the Product KFS and other relevant disclosure requirements as shown in the attached table.

<u>Topics</u>	<u>Provisions of the revised UT Code</u>	<u>Schemes that submit their applications for authorization on or after the Effective Date</u> <u>(i.e. New Schemes)</u>	<u>SFC-authorized schemes as of the Effective Date and schemes that submit their applications for authorization prior to the Effective Date and which are subsequently authorized</u> <u>(i.e. Existing Schemes)</u>
<b><u>A. Investment activities</u></b>			
<u>Structured funds</u>	<u>8.8</u>	<u>Immediate implementation</u>	<u>Grandfathered (unless there is a change in investment objectives or strategies which falls within the scope of the revisions to this UT Code)</u>
<u>Funds that invest in financial derivative instruments</u>	<u>8.9</u>		
<u>Investments in other schemes</u>	<u>7.11-7.11B</u>		
<b><u>B. Disclosure and reporting</u></b>			
<u>Bilingual annual reports</u>	<u>11.6</u>	<u>Voluntary compliance for all SFC-authorized funds</u>	





<b>Proposals</b>	<b>Provisions of the revised UT Code</b>	<b>Schemes that submit their applications for authorization on or after the Effective Date (i.e. New Schemes)</b>	<b>SFC-authorized schemes as of the Effective Date and schemes that submit their applications for authorization prior to the Effective Date and which are subsequently authorized (i.e. Existing Schemes)</b>
<b>Product KFS and other disclosure requirements set out in the revised UT Code</b>	<b>6.2A3</b>	<b>Immediate implementation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Existing Schemes no longer marketed to the public in HK – compliance not required</li> <li>• Existing Schemes that are still being marketed to the public in HK- a transitional period of 12 months from the Effective Date to comply</li> </ul>
<b>C. Miscellaneous</b>			
<b>Connected party transactions</b>	<b>10.13</b>	<b>Immediately effective <sup>1</sup></b>	
<b>Criteria for the appointment of a Hong Kong representative</b>	<b>9.4</b>	<b>Immediately effective <sup>1</sup></b>	
<b>Performance fees</b>	<b>6.17</b>	<b>Immediately effective <sup>1,2</sup></b>	
<b>Maximum interval for payment of</b>	<b>6.14</b>	<b>Immediately effective <sup>1</sup></b>	



redemption amounts		
Sub-managers of multimanager schemes	Note to 5.5(b)	Immediately effective <sup>1</sup>
Distribution of financial reports	11.6	Immediately effective <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Existing Schemes are not required to adopt the revised provisions in the “Miscellaneous” section. The managers of these schemes may continue to utilize the existing provisions as already set out in the offering and constitutive documents of the schemes. Where the managers of these schemes intend to adopt any of the relevant provisions in the revised UT Code, they must ensure that the offering documents and/or constitutive documents are properly amended, and investors are duly informed in accordance with both the terms set out in the constitutive documents of the schemes and the provisions in the revised UT Code. Further, investors shall be provided with at least one month’s (or such longer period as required under the constitutive documents of the schemes or by the Commission) prior notice of any of the changes to be adopted by the managers.

<sup>2</sup> Existing Schemes shall provide investors with three months’ prior notice if the new performance fee provision is to be adopted. Further, such schemes shall have already adopted, and disclosed in their offering documents, a benchmark by reference to which scheme performance will be measured.

## Explanatory Notes:

- (a) The Securities and Futures Commission is empowered under s-section 104(1) of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (“~~Ordinance~~SFO”) to authorize collective investment schemes. By virtue of s-section 104(1), the authorization may be granted subject to such conditions as the Commission considers appropriate. This Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds (“UT Code”), which forms part of the Handbook, establishes guidelines for the authorization of collective investment schemes in the nature of mutual fund corporations or unit trusts, and codifies practices established in relation to the former Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds published pursuant to the ~~Securities and Futures Ordinance~~ SFO. Any change or amendment to this UT Code will be made known to the industry and transitional periods for compliance will be allowed where necessary.
- (b) The Commission may review its authorization at any time and may modify, add to or withdraw such authorization as it deems fit.
- (c) The issue of an advertisement or invitation to the public in Hong Kong to invest in an unauthorized collective investment scheme may amount to an offence under s-section 103 of the ~~Ordinance~~ SFO.
- (d) This UT Code is made under section 399 of the SFO.
- (e) This UT Code does not have the force of law.



# Table of Contents

<b>Part I : General matters</b>	<b>[•]</b>
Chapter 1: Authorization procedures	[•]
Chapter 2: <del>Administrative Arrangement</del> <u>Products Advisory Committee</u>	[•]
Chapter 3: Interpretation	[•]
<b>Part II: Authorization requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
Chapter 4: Trustee / Custodian	[•]
Chapter 5: Management company and auditor	[•]
Chapter 6: Operational requirements	[•]
Scheme documentation	[•]
Member register	[•]
Investment plans	[•]
Pricing, issue & redemption of units / shares	[•]
Meetings	[•]
Fees	[•]
Chapter 7: Investment: core requirements	[•]
Chapter 8: Specialized schemes	[•]
8.1 Unit portfolio management funds	[•]
8.2 Money market / Cash management funds	[•]
8.3 Warrant funds	[•]
8.4 <del>Leveraged Funds</del> <u>(deleted)</u>	[•]
8.4 <b>AA</b> Futures and options funds	[•]
8.5 Guaranteed funds	[•]
8.6 Index funds	[•]
8.7 Hedge funds	[•]



<b><u>8.8 Structured funds</u></b>	[•]
<b><u>8.9 Funds that invest in financial derivative instruments</u></b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 9: Additional requirements for Non-Hong Kong based schemes</b>	[•]
<b>Part III: Post-authorization requirements</b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 10: Operational matters</b>	[•]
<b>Valuation and pricing</b>	[•]
<b>Pricing errors</b>	[•]
<b>Changes to dealing</b>	[•]
<b>Suspension and deferral of dealings</b>	[•]
<b>Transactions with connected persons</b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 11: Documentation and reporting</b>	[•]
<b><u>Ongoing disclosures</u></b>	[•]
<b><del>Scheme Changes</del></b>	[•]
<b>Notices to holders</b>	[•]
<b>Withdrawal of authorization</b>	[•]
<b>Merger or termination</b>	[•]
<b>Reporting requirements</b>	[•]
<b>Advertising materials</b>	[•]
<b>Mention of SFC authorization</b>	[•]
<b>Appendices</b>	
<b>Appendix A1: <del>Recognized jurisdiction schemes</del> <u>(deleted)</u></b>	[•]
<b>Appendix A2: <del>Inspection regimes</del> <u>(deleted)</u></b>	[•]
<b>Appendix B: <del>Application form</del> <u>(deleted)</u></b>	[•]
<b>Appendix C: Information to be disclosed in the offering document</b>	[•]
<b>Appendix D: Contents of the constitutive documents</b>	[•]
<b>Appendix E: Contents of financial reports</b>	[•]



<b>Appendix F: (deleted)</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Appendix G: Guidelines for review of internal controls and systems of trustees / custodians</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Appendix H: Guidelines on hedge funds reporting requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Appendix I: Guidelines for regulating index tracking exchange traded funds</b>	<b>[•]</b>



## Part I: General matters

### Chapter 1: Authorization procedures

#### Schemes established in Hong Kong or elsewhere

- 1.1 Schemes to be established in Hong Kong or elsewhere are normally expected to comply with the applicable provisions of the Handbook, including without limitation, all of the applicable provisions of this UT Code in order to be authorized in Hong Kong by the SFC pursuant to section 104 of the SFO.

Applications for authorization which seek waivers of any of these provisions must give detailed reasons why waivers are sought.

#### Scheme established in recognized jurisdictions

- 1.2 This UT Code accepts that some schemes already comply with certain provisions of this UT Code by virtue of prior authorization in a regulated jurisdiction. It therefore recognizes the types of scheme in jurisdictions set out in the listed in Appendix A1, list of recognized jurisdictions published on the Commission's website. Applications for authorization of recognized jurisdiction schemes will generally be reviewed on the basis that the scheme's structural and operational requirements, and core investment restrictions, already comply in substance with this UT Code. Applicants should note however that the SFC expects a scheme to comply in all material respects with this UT Code and reserves the right to require such compliance as a condition of authorization ~~[see Appendix A1]~~.

#### Documents to be supplied to the Commission

- 1.3 An applicant for authorization of a scheme must submit a completed Application Form and an Information Checklist as set out in Appendix B on the Commission's website. The Application Form must also be accompanied by the following:-
- (a) the scheme's offering and constitutive documents, including its Hong Kong Offering Document and Product KFS [see 3.63-56 and 3.9 and 3.11B3-12];
  - (b) the scheme's latest audited report (if any) and if more recent, the latest unaudited report;
  - (c) management company profile [if applicable - see Appendix B Application Form];
  - (d) the trustee/custodian's latest audited report [if applicable - see Appendix B Application Form];
  - (e) letter of consent to the appointment from the trustee/custodian (not required for recognized jurisdiction schemes or schemes already in existence);
  - (f) application fee in the form of a cheque payable to the "Securities & Futures Commission"; and



- (g) ~~The~~ letter nominating an individual to be approved by the Commission as an approved person [see 1.5] containing the individual's name, employer, position held and contact details, including, in so far as applicable, the address, telephone and facsimile numbers, and electronic mail address.

The current fee schedule is available on ~~request from~~ the Commission's [website](#).

In addition to the above, applicants for authorization of a non Hong Kong-based scheme must supply the following:-

- (h) Hong Kong Representative Agreement and Undertaking [see Chapter 9];

Applicants for authorization of a recognized jurisdiction scheme must also supply:-

- (i) evidence of the scheme's authorized status in that jurisdiction.

### **Amendments to documents**

- 1.4 In cases where it may not be suitable to amend documentation to comply with a requirement of ~~the Handbook or~~ this [UT Code](#), the Commission may accept a written undertaking from the relevant party that they will comply with the requirement, together with disclosure in the Hong Kong Offering Document regarding compliance.

### **Nomination of an individual as approved person**

- 1.5 According to sections 104(2) and 105(2) of the ~~Ordinance SFO~~, an individual must be approved for the purposes of being served by the Commission with notices and decisions for, respectively, the scheme and the issue of any related advertisement, invitation or document. An applicant for authorization is, therefore, required to nominate an individual for approval by the Commission as an approved person.
- 1.6 An approved person should:
- (a) have his/her ordinary residence in Hong Kong;
  - (b) inform the Commission of his/her current contact details, including, in so far as applicable, the address, telephone and facsimile numbers, and electronic mail address;
  - (c) be capable of being contacted by the Commission by post, telephone, facsimile and electronic mail during business hours;
  - (d) inform the Commission of any change in his/her contact details within 14 days after the change takes place; and
  - (e) comply with any other requirements as the Commission considers appropriate.





- 1.7 An individual approved by the Commission as an approved person for a scheme shall generally be approved also for the issue of any advertisement, invitation or document made in respect of that scheme.



## **Chapter 2: Administrative Arrangements Products Advisory Committee**

~~2.1 The Commission has delegated its powers under s.104 of the Ordinance with respect to collective investment schemes to the Committee on Unit Trusts, the Executive Director (Intermediaries and Investment Products) and the Director (Investment Products). Powers are normally exercised by the Committee when new management groups or new policy issues are considered; otherwise powers are normally exercised by the Director (Investment Products).~~

~~2.12 According to section 8 of the SFO, the Commission is empowered to set up committees, whether for advisory or other purposes. The Commission has will established a Products Advisory the Committee on Unit Trusts under s.8 of the Ordinance for the purposes of consultation and advice on matters which may relate to collective investment schemes within the scope of this UT Code of the Handbook. The remit of the Products Advisory Committee and its membership will be set out in its Terms of Reference.:-~~

~~(a) authorizing collective investment schemes under s.104(1) of the Ordinance;~~

~~(b) imposing conditions when authorizing collective investment schemes (s.104(1) of the Ordinance);~~

~~(c) granting waivers from this Code; and~~

~~(d) considering whether there should be any amendments to the legislation relating to collective investment schemes and to this Code and making recommendations to the Commission accordingly.~~

~~The constitution of the Committee is:-~~

~~*Chairman*~~

~~Any Executive Director of the SFC;~~

~~*Members (14)*~~

~~Non-executive Director of the SFC;  
Director (Investment Products), SFC (ex-officio and deputises as Chairman in the absence of the Chairman);~~

~~Representative of the Mandatory Provident Fund Schemes Authority;  
Chairman of the Hong Kong Investment Funds Association (ex-officio);~~

~~Four persons from fund management companies;~~

~~Two persons from trustee companies;~~

~~Person nominated by the SFC;~~

~~Appointments I and II ad personam; and~~

~~Actuary member~~

~~*Alternate Members (8)*~~

~~Five persons from fund management companies;~~

~~Two persons from trustee companies; and~~

~~Alternate actuary member~~

~~-~~



## **Quorum and Meetings**

~~The quorum for any meeting of the Committee is five members, one of whom must be an Executive Director or Director of the Commission and one of whom must be employed by a fund management company.~~

~~The Committee has appointed a Senior Manager (Investment Products), SFC as Secretary. The Secretary attends the Committee's discussions but has no vote.~~

~~2.2 [deleted]~~

~~2.3 [deleted]~~

~~2.4 [deleted]~~

~~2.5 [deleted]~~

~~2.3 On request, the Commission will give reasons for decisions reached.~~

~~2.4 Under s.10(4) of the Ordinance, the Commission may concurrently perform any function, power or duty which it has delegated but the Commission does not intend to exercise this right by reviewing a decision of the Committee except where there has been:-~~

~~(a) a manifest error; or~~

~~(b) an application of defective procedures; or~~

~~(c) a manifest misinterpretation of this Code.~~

## **Procedure for Amendments to this Code**

~~2.5 The Committee may make recommendations to the Commission whenever it considers that the provisions of this Code should be amended. If the Commission accepts the Committee's recommendation, any such change or amendment will be made known to the industry and transitional periods for compliance will be allowed where necessary.~~

## **Data privacy**

2.6 The information requested under ~~the this UT~~ Code may result in the applicant providing the Commission with personal data as defined in the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance. The data supplied will only be used by the Commission to perform its functions, in the course of which it may match, compare, transfer or exchange personal data with data held or obtained by the Commission, government bodies, other regulatory authorities, corporations, organizations or individuals in Hong Kong or overseas for the purpose of verifying those data. Subject to the limits in ~~s. section~~ 378 of the ~~Ordinance SFO~~, the Commission may disclose personal data to other regulatory bodies. You may be entitled under the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance to request access to or to request the correction of any data supplied to the Commission, in the manner and subject to the limitations prescribed. All enquiries should be directed to the Data Privacy Officer at the SFC.



## Chapter 3: Interpretation

*Unless otherwise defined, words and expressions used in this UT Code are as defined in the ~~Securities and Futures Ordinance~~ SFO.*

- 3.1A “Advertising Guidelines” means the Advertising Guidelines Applicable to Collective Investment Schemes Authorized under the Product Codes.
- 3.1B “Capital markets scheme” means a scheme, the primary objective of which is to invest in debt securities which have a remaining term to maturity of one year or more.
- 3.2 “Collective investment scheme” or “scheme” means collective investment schemes commonly regarded as mutual funds (whether they appear in the legal forms of contractual model, companies with variable capital or otherwise) and unit trusts as are contemplated in this UT Code.
- 3.3 “Commission” or “SFC” means the Securities and Futures Commission referred to in section 3(1) of the ~~Ordinance~~ SFO.

~~3.3.4 [deleted]~~

~~3.4 — “Committee” means the Committee on Unit Trusts.~~

- 3.5 “Connected person” in relation to a company means:-
- (a) any person or company beneficially owning, directly or indirectly, 20% or more of the ordinary share capital of that company or able to exercise directly or indirectly, 20% or more of the total votes in that company; or
  - (b) any person or company controlled by a person who or which meets one or both of the descriptions given in (a); or
  - (c) any member of the group of which that company forms part; or
  - (d) any director or officer of that company or of any of its connected persons as defined in (a), (b) or (c).
- 3.6 “Constitutive documents” means the principal documents governing the formation of the scheme, and includes the trust deed in the case of a unit trust and the Articles of Association of a mutual fund corporation and all material agreements.
- 3.7 “Distribution function” refers generally to those functions described in 9.3 (a) to (d) of this UT Code.

~~3.7A “Financial derivative instruments” refers to financial instruments which derive their value from the value and characteristics of one or more underlying assets.~~

- 3.8 “Holder” in relation to a unit or share in a scheme means the person who is entered in the register as the holder of that unit or share or the bearer of a bearer certificate representing that unit or share.



- 3.9 “Hong Kong Offering Document” means an offering document for distribution in Hong Kong containing the information required by Appendix C of this UT Code, and any other information necessary for investors to make an informed judgement about the scheme.
- 3.10 “Offering document” means that document, or documents issued together, containing information on a scheme to invite offers by the public to buy units/shares in the scheme.
- 3.11 “~~Ordinance~~SFO” means the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Chapter 571 of the Laws of Hong Kong).
- 3.11A “Product Code” means any of the following codes administered by the Commission:
- (a) Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds
  - (b) Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes
  - (c) Code on Pooled Retirement Funds
  - (d) SFC Code on MPF Products
- 3.11B “Product Key Facts StatementKFS” means the Product Key Facts Statement which is the statement required pursuant to 6.32A.
- 3.12 “Recognized jurisdiction scheme” means a scheme authorized pursuant to overseas laws as listed in the list of recognized jurisdiction schemes which is where the jurisdiction in which the scheme is authorized is included in the list of recognized jurisdictions as published on the Commission’s website as amended from time to timeas listed in Appendix A1 of this Code.
- 3.~~12A~~123A “Registered person” means a “registered institution” and, except where the context otherwise requires, includes a “relevant individual” as defined in section 20(10) of the Banking Ordinance (Chapter- 155 of Laws of Hong Kong).
- 3.13 “Substantial financial institution” means an authorized institution as defined in section 2(1) of the Banking Ordinance (Chapter 155 of Laws of Hong Kong) or financial institution with a minimum paid-up capital of HK\$150,000,000 or its equivalent in foreign currency.
- 3.14 “Trustee/custodian”, “trustee” or “custodian” means the entity appointed pursuant to 4.1 of this UT Code.
- 3.15 “UCITS scheme” means a collective investment scheme which is already authorized under the relevant national legislation of a member state of the European Union implementing the “Council Directive 85/611/EC of 20 December 1985 on the coordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to undertakings for collective investment in transferable securities (UCITS)” (as amended).



## Part II: Authorization requirements

### Chapter 4: Trustee/Custodian

#### Appointment of Trustee/Custodian

- 4.1 Every collective investment scheme for which authorization is requested must appoint a trustee/custodian acceptable to the Commission.

*Notes (1): Schemes established under trust must have a trustee and mutual fund corporations must have a custodian. This chapter lists the general obligations of the trustee/custodian, whichever is appointed. Trustees are expected to fulfill the duties imposed on them by the general law of trusts. In the case of a mutual fund corporation, the responsibilities of a custodian should be reflected in a constitutive document such as a Custodian Agreement. [see Appendix D]*

*Notes (2): An acceptable trustee/custodian should either:*

- (i) on an ongoing basis, be subject to regulatory supervision; or*
- (ii) appoint an independent auditor to periodically review its internal controls and systems on terms of reference agreed with the SFC and should file such report with the SFC.*

*[see Appendix G -“Guidelines for Review of Internal Controls and Systems of Trustees/Custodians”]*

- 4.2 A trustee/custodian must be:-

- (a) a bank licensed under [Section 16 of the Banking Ordinance \(Chapter 155 of Laws of Hong Kong\)](#); or
- (b) a trust company which is a subsidiary of such a bank; or
- (c) a trust company registered under Part VIII of the Trustee Ordinance; or
- (d) a banking institution or trust company incorporated outside Hong Kong which is acceptable to the Commission.

- 4.3 A trustee/custodian must be independently audited and have minimum issued and paid-up capital and non-distributable capital reserves of HK\$10 million or its equivalent in foreign currency.

- 4.4 Notwithstanding 4.3 above, the trustee/custodian's paid-up capital and non-distributable capital reserves may be less than HK\$10 million if the trustee/custodian is a wholly-owned subsidiary of a substantial financial institution (the holding company); and

- (a) the holding company issues a standing commitment to subscribe sufficient additional capital up to the required amount, if so required by the Commission; or



- (b) the holding company undertakes that it would not let its wholly-owned subsidiary default and would not, without prior approval of the Commission, voluntarily dispose of, or permit the disposal or issue of any share capital of the trustee/custodian such that it ceases to be a wholly-owned subsidiary of the holding company.

### **General obligations of trustee/custodian**

#### 4.5 The trustee/custodian must:-

- (a)
  - (i) take into its custody or under its control all the property of the scheme and hold it in trust for the holders (in the case of a unit trust) or the scheme (in the case of a mutual fund corporation) in accordance with the provisions of the constitutive documents;
  - (ii) register cash and registrable assets in the name of or to the order of the trustee/custodian; where borrowing is undertaken for the account of the scheme, such assets may be registered in the lender's name or in that of a nominee appointed by the lender; and
  - (iii) be liable for the acts and omissions of its nominees and agents in relation to assets forming part of the property of the scheme;
- (b) take reasonable care to ensure that the sale, issue, repurchase, redemption and cancellation of units/shares effected by a scheme are carried out in accordance with the provisions of the constitutive documents;
- (c) take reasonable care to ensure that the methods adopted by the management company in calculating the value of units/shares are adequate to ensure that the sale, issue, repurchase, redemption and cancellation prices are calculated in accordance with the provisions of the constitutive documents;
- (d) carry out the instructions of the management company in respect of investments unless they are in conflict with the provisions of the offering or constitutive documents or this [UT Code](#);
- (e) take reasonable care to ensure that the investment and borrowing limitations set out in the constitutive documents and the conditions under which the scheme was authorized are complied with;
- (f) issue a report to the holders to be included in the annual report on whether in the trustee/custodian's opinion, the management company has in all material respects managed the scheme in accordance with the provisions of the constitutive documents; if the management company has not done so, the respects in which it has not done so and the steps which the trustee/custodian has taken in respect thereof; and



- (g) **where applicable**, take reasonable care to ensure that unit/share certificates are not issued until subscription moneys have been paid.

#### **Retirement of trustee/custodian**

- 4.6 The trustee/custodian may not retire except upon the appointment of a new trustee/custodian and subject to the prior approval of the Commission. The retirement of the trustee/custodian should take effect at the same time as the new trustee/custodian takes up office.

#### **Independence of trustee/custodian and the management company**

- 4.7 The trustee/custodian and the management company must be persons who are independent of each other.
- 4.8 Notwithstanding 4.7 above, if the trustee/custodian and the management company are both bodies corporate having the same ultimate holding company, whether incorporated in Hong Kong or outside Hong Kong, the trustee/custodian and the management company are deemed to be independent of each other if:-
- (a)
    - (i) they are both subsidiaries of a substantial financial institution;
    - (ii) neither the trustee/custodian nor the management company is a subsidiary of the other;
    - (iii) no person is a director of both the trustee/custodian and the management company; and
    - (iv) both the trustee/custodian and the management company sign an undertaking that they will act independently of each other in their dealings with the scheme; or
  - (b) the scheme is established in a jurisdiction where the trustee/custodian and the management company are required by law to act independently of one another.





## Chapter 5: Management company and auditor

### Appointment of the management company

- 5.1 Every collective investment scheme for which authorization is requested must appoint a management company acceptable to the Commission, except as provided for self-managed schemes below.

*Note: The investment management operations of a fund management company or those of the investment adviser (where the latter has been delegated the investment management function) should be based in a jurisdiction with an inspection regime acceptable to the Commission. A list of acceptable inspection regimes is published set out in Appendix A2 on the Commission's website. The Commission will consider other jurisdictions on their merits and may accept an undertaking from the management company that the books and records in relation to its management of a scheme will be made available for inspection by the Commission on request.*

- 5.2 A management company must:-
- (a) be engaged primarily in the business of fund management;
  - (b) have sufficient financial resources at its disposal to enable it to conduct its business effectively and meet its liabilities; in particular, it must have a minimum issued and paid-up capital and capital reserves of HK\$1 million or its equivalent in foreign currency;
  - (c) not lend to a material extent; and
  - (d) maintain at all times a positive net asset position.
- 5.3 Indebtedness owed by the management company to its parent company will be considered as part of capital for the purpose of 5.2(b) in the following circumstances:-
- (a) the indebtedness must not be settled without the prior written consent of the Commission; and
  - (b) the indebtedness must be subordinated to all other liabilities of the management company, both in terms of its entitlement to income and its rights in a liquidation.

#### *Qualifications of Directors*

- 5.4 The directors of the management company must be of good repute and in the opinion of the Commission possess the necessary experience for the performance of their duties. In determining the acceptability of the management company, the Commission may consider the qualifications and experience of persons employed by the management company and any appointed investment adviser.



### *Criteria for Acceptability of Management Company*

- 5.5 The acceptability of the management company will be assessed on the following criteria:
- (a) The key personnel of the management company or those of the investment adviser (where the latter has been delegated the investment management function) are expected to possess at least five years investment experience managing unit trusts or other public funds with reputable institutions. The expertise gained should be in the same type of investments as those proposed for the funds seeking authorization.
  - (b) Key personnel must be dedicated full-time staff with a demonstrable track record in the management of unit trusts or mutual funds. In assessing the qualifications of the personnel of the management company, the Commission may request resumes of the directors of the management company and its delegates (if any). ~~[see 2.6]~~
- Note: In the case of a multimanager scheme which is generally expected to have at least three sub-managers delegated with investment function in managing the scheme's assets under the active monitoring of the management company, the Commission may accept that the key personnel of such sub-managers have demonstrable investment experience in areas not limited to that relating to public funds on a case-by-case basis. The offering document of the scheme should clearly disclose, among others, the due diligence processes adopted by the management company in selecting and monitoring the sub-managers on an on-going basis.*
- (c) Sufficient human and technical resources must be at the disposal of the management company, which should not rely solely on a single individual's expertise.
  - (d) The Commission must be satisfied with the overall integrity of the applicant management company. Reasonable assurance must be secured of the adequacy of internal controls and the existence of written procedures, which should be regularly monitored by its senior management for updatedness and compliance. Conflicts of interests must be properly addressed to safeguard investors' interests.
  - (e) Where the investment management functions are delegated to third parties, there should be on-going supervision and regular monitoring of the competence of the delegates by the management company to ensure that the management company's accountability to investors is not diminished. Although the investment management role of the management company may be sub-contracted to third parties, the responsibilities and obligations of the management company may not be delegated.



### *Licensing Requirement*

- 5.6 The type of licence required depends on the functions performed by the management company in Hong Kong. A management company should be properly licensed or registered under Part V of the ~~Ordinance-SFO~~ to carry on its regulated activities.

### *Self-managed Schemes*

- 5.7 Notwithstanding 5.1, a scheme could be managed by its own board of directors who perform the functions of a management company. In this case, references in this UT Code to the directors of a management company are deemed to be references to the directors of a self-managed scheme.
- 5.8 The directors of a self-managed scheme are prohibited from dealing with the scheme as principals.
- 5.9 The regulations of a self-managed scheme must contain the following provisions:-
- (a) that holders could convene a meeting and, by way of an ordinary resolution, remove any of the directors considered no longer fit and proper to manage the scheme's assets; and
  - (b) that the directors' fees and remuneration should be fixed by the holders at a general meeting.

### **General obligations of a management company**

- 5.10 A management company must:-
- (a) manage the scheme in accordance with the scheme's constitutive documents in the ~~exclusive~~ **best** interest of the holders. It is also expected to fulfill the duties imposed on it by the general law;
  - (b) maintain or cause to be maintained the books and records of the scheme and prepare the scheme's accounts and reports. At least two reports must be published in respect of each financial year. These reports must be sent to all registered holders and filed with the Commission within the time frame specified in 11.6; and
  - (c) ensure that the constitutive documents are made available for inspection by the public in Hong Kong, free of charge at all times during normal office hours at its place of business or that of its Hong Kong Representative and make copies of such documents available upon the payment of a reasonable fee.

### **Retirement of a management company**

- 5.11 The management company must be subject to removal by notice in writing from the trustee or the directors of a mutual fund corporation in any of the following events:-



- (a) the management company goes into liquidation, becomes bankrupt or has a receiver appointed over its assets; or
- (b) for good and sufficient reason, the trustee or the directors of a mutual fund corporation state in writing that a change in management company is desirable in the interests of the holders; or
- (c) in the case of a unit trust, holders representing at least 50% in value of the units outstanding (excluding those held or deemed to be held by the management company), deliver to the trustee a written request to dismiss the management company.

5.12 In addition, the management company must retire:-

- (a) in all other cases provided for in the constitutive documents; or
- (b) when the Commission withdraws its approval of the management company.

5.13 The Commission must be informed by the trustee or the directors of a mutual fund corporation of any decision to remove the management company.

5.14 Upon the retirement or dismissal of the management company, the trustee or the directors of a mutual fund corporation must appoint a new management company as soon as possible, subject to the approval of the Commission.

#### **Appointment of the auditor**

5.15 The management company or the directors of a mutual fund corporation must, at the outset and upon any vacancy, appoint an auditor for the scheme.

5.16 The auditor must be independent of the management company, the trustee/custodian, and, in the case of a mutual fund corporation, the directors.

5.17 The management company must cause the scheme's annual report to be audited by the auditor, and such report should contain the information in Appendix E.



## Chapter 6: Operational requirements

### Scheme documentation

#### *Matters to be disclosed in offering document*

- 6.1 Authorized schemes must issue an up-to-date offering document, which should contain the information necessary for investors to be able to make an informed judgement of the investment proposed to them, and in particular should contain the information listed in Appendix C.

*Note: Provided that the Commission is satisfied that the overall disclosure of required information is clear, a scheme may supplement an overseas offering document with a Hong Kong Covering Document. The Commission however specifically encourages the use of a short, clearly written Hong Kong Offering Document.*

#### *English and Chinese offering documents*

- 6.2 Except as provided herein, the information required in Appendix C must be provided in the English and Chinese languages. The Commission may waive the requirement that the information be provided in both languages on a case by case basis where the management company satisfies the Commission that the scheme will only be offered to persons who are fully conversant in the language in which it is intended to publish the information.

#### Product Key Facts Statement (“Product KFS”)

- 6.2A An authorized scheme must issue a an up-to-date Product Key Facts Statement KFS. Such statement shall be deemed to form a part of the offering document and shall contain information that enables investors to comprehend the key features and risks of the scheme. Illustrative templates of the Product Key Facts Statement will be made available on the Commission’s website.**

**Notes : (1) The Commission may, on an exceptional basis, allow the Product KFS not to be deemed to form a part of the offering documents of certain foreign schemes, on the basis of overriding legal requirements of the home jurisdiction.**

**(2) Illustrative templates of the Product KFS are available on the Commission’s website.**

#### *Accompaniment to offering document*

- 6.3 The offering document must be accompanied by the scheme's most recent audited annual report and accounts together with its semi-annual report if published after the annual report.
- 6.4 No application form may be supplied to any person not a holder unless accompanied by the offering document, except that an advertisement or report containing all the requirements of Appendix C may be allowed to incorporate an application form.



#### *Inclusion of performance data*

- 6.5 If performance data or estimated yield is quoted, the Commission may require supporting documentation. No forecast of the scheme's performance may be made. The publication of a prospective yield does not constitute a forecast of performance.

#### *Contents of constitutive documents*

- 6.6 The constitutive documents of a scheme should contain the information listed in Appendix D. Nothing in the constitutive documents may provide that the trustee/custodian, management company or directors of the scheme can be exempted from any liability to holders imposed under Hong Kong law or the law of the scheme's place of domicile or breaches of trust through fraud or negligence, nor may they be indemnified against such liability by holders or at holders' expense.

#### *Changes to scheme documentation*

- 6.7 The constitutive documents may be altered by the management company and trustee/custodian, without consulting holders, provided that the trustee/custodian certifies in writing that in its opinion the proposed alteration:-
- (a) is necessary to make possible compliance with fiscal or other statutory or official requirements; or
  - (b) does not materially prejudice holders' interests, does not to any material extent release the trustee/custodian, management company or any other person from any liability to holders and does not increase the costs and charges payable from the scheme property; or
  - (c) is necessary to correct a manifest error.

In all other cases no alteration may be made except by a special or extraordinary resolution of holders or the approval of the Commission.

#### **Member register**

- 6.8 The scheme, or in the case of a unit trust, the trustee or the person so appointed by the trustee must maintain a register of holders. The Commission must be advised on request of the address(es) where the register is kept.

#### **Investment plans**

- 6.9 If investment plans are offered:-
- (a) before contracting for a plan, a prospective planholder must be given full details in writing of his rights and obligations, of all costs and charges levied on planholders and of the consequences of terminating his plan;



- (b) unless he has requested to the contrary, each planholder must be advised at least once every quarter of the opening balance of units, latest transaction details and closing balance of units;
- (c) the plan must include a direction to potential investors that they should refer to the offering document of the scheme to which they are considering linking their plan;
- (d) an investment plan leaflet to be distributed in Hong Kong must not solicit investment in schemes which have not been authorized by the Commission; and
- (e) in respect of any increase of initial fee of investment plans up to the maximum permitted level, no less than one month's prior notice must be given to holders concerned.

## **Pricing, issue & redemption of units/shares**

### *Initial offers*

- 6.10 If an initial offer is made, no investment of subscription money can be made until the conclusion of the first issue of units/shares at the initial price.

### *Valuation & pricing*

- 6.11 Offer and redemption prices should be calculated on the basis of the scheme's net asset value divided by the number of units/shares outstanding. Such prices may be adjusted by fees and charges, provided the amount or method of calculating such fees and charges is clearly disclosed in the offering document.

### *Valuation of unquoted securities*

- 6.12 The value of investments not listed or quoted on a recognized market should be determined on a regular basis by a professional person approved by the trustee/custodian as qualified to value such investments. Such professional person may, with the approval of the trustee/custodian, be the management company.

### *Dealing*

- 6.13 There must be at least one regular dealing day per month. Any offer price which the management company or the distribution company quotes or publishes must be the maximum price payable on purchase and any redemption price must be the net price receivable on redemption.
- 6.14 The maximum interval between the receipt of a properly documented request for redemption of units/shares and the payment of the redemption money to the holder may not exceed one calendar month unless the market(s) in which a substantial portion of investments is made is subject to legal or regulatory requirements (such as foreign currency controls) thus rendering the payment of the redemption money within the aforesaid time period not practicable. In such case, the extended time frame for the payment of redemption money shall reflect the additional time needed in light of the specific circumstances in the relevant market(s).



## Meetings

6.15 A scheme should arrange to conduct general meetings of holders as follows:-

- (a) Holders must be able to appoint proxies;
- (b) Votes should be proportionate to the number of units/shares held or to the value of units/shares held where there are accumulation units/shares;
- (c) The quorum for meetings at which a special or extraordinary resolution is to be considered should be the holders of 25% of the units or shares in issue and 10% if only an ordinary resolution is to be considered;
- (d) If within half an hour from the time appointed for the meeting a quorum is not present, the meeting should be adjourned for not less than 15 days. The quorum at an adjourned meeting will be those holders present at the adjourned meeting in person or by proxy;
- (e) If the possibility exists of a conflict of interest between different classes of holders there should be provision for class meetings;
- (f) An Extraordinary General Meeting should be called for the following purposes:
  - (i) to modify, alter or add to the constitutive documents, except as provided in 6.778;
  - (ii) to terminate the scheme (unless the means of termination of the scheme are set out in the constitutive documents, in which case termination must be effected as required);
  - (iii) to increase the maximum fees paid to the management company, trustee/custodian or directors of the scheme; or
  - (iv) to impose other types of fees.
- (g) Where bearer units are in issue, provision must be made for notification to bearer holders in Hong Kong of the timing and agenda of forthcoming meetings and voting arrangements;
- (h) The directors of the scheme, the trustee/custodian, the management company, investment adviser and their connected persons must be prohibited from voting their beneficially owned shares at, or counted in the quorum for, a meeting at which they have a material interest in the business to be contracted;
- (i) An ordinary resolution may be passed by a simple majority of the votes of those present and entitled to vote in person or by proxy at a duly convened meeting; and
- (j) A special or extraordinary resolution may only be passed by 75% or more of the votes of those present and entitled to vote in person or by proxy at a duly convened meeting.





## Fees

- 6.16 The level/basis of calculation of all costs and charges payable from the scheme's property must be clearly stated, with percentages expressed on a per annum basis [see C1464 of Appendix C]. The aggregate level of fees for investment management or advisory functions should also be disclosed.

*Note: Percentage-based transaction fees payable to the management company or any of its connected persons may be disallowed as inconsistent with the management company's fiduciary responsibility.*

- 6.17 If a performance fee is levied, the fee can only be payable:-

- (a) no more frequently than annually; and
- (b) if the net asset value per unit/share exceeds the net asset value per unit/share on which the performance fee was last calculated and paid (i.e. on a "high-on-high" basis).

*Note: Notwithstanding 6.187(b), the performance fee may also be calculated with reference to the performance of a benchmark or an asset class and the performance fee is only payable upon outperformance of the net asset value per unit/share vis-à-vis that of the benchmark or asset class.*

- 6.18 The following fees, costs and charges must not be paid from the scheme's property:-

- (a) commissions payable to sales agents arising out of any dealing in units/shares of the scheme;
- (b) expenses arising out of any advertising or promotional activities in connection with the scheme;
- (c) expenses which are not ordinarily paid from the property of schemes authorized in Hong Kong; and
- (d) expenses which have not been disclosed in the constitutive documents as required by D10 of Appendix D.



## Chapter 7: Investment: core requirements

This Chapter sets out the core requirements of the investment limitations and prohibitions of a collective investment scheme, other than a specialized scheme under Chapter 8.

### *Spread of Investments*

- 7.1 The value of a scheme's holding of securities issued by any single issuer may not exceed 10% of its total net asset value.

*Notes: (1) An issuer of investments based on an underlying security (such as an issuer of covered warrants) is treated separately from an issuer of the underlying security, provided that the 10% restriction applicable to any single issuer is not exceeded if and when any rights of convertibility are exercised.*

*(2) A waiver of this section can be considered on a case-by-case basis for a scheme whose sole objective is to track an index with constituent stocks exceeding 10%.*

- 7.2 A scheme may not hold more than 10% of any ordinary shares issued by any single issuer.

- 7.3 The value of a scheme's holding of securities **neither listed, nor quoted nor dealt in** on a market may not exceed 15% of its total net asset value.

*Note: Market means any stock exchange, over-the-counter market or other organized securities market that is open to the international public and on which such securities are regularly traded.*

- 7.3A Notwithstanding 7.1, 7.2, and 7.3, where direct investment **by a scheme** in a market is not in the best interests of investors, a scheme may invest through a wholly-owned subsidiary company established solely for the purpose of making direct investments in such market. In this case:-
- (a) the underlying investments of the subsidiary, together with the direct investments made by the scheme, must in aggregate comply with the requirements of this Chapter;
  - (b) any increase in the overall fees and charges directly or indirectly borne by the holders or the scheme as a result must be clearly disclosed in the offering document; and
  - (c) the scheme must produce the reports required by 5.10(b) in a consolidated form to include the assets (including investment portfolio) and liabilities of the subsidiary company as part of those of the scheme.



### *Government and other public securities*

- 7.4 Notwithstanding 7.1 and 7.2, up to 30% of a scheme's total net asset value may be invested in Government and other public securities of the same issue.
- 7.5 Subject to 7.4, a scheme may invest all of its assets in Government and other public securities in at least six different issues.

- Notes: (1) *"Government and other public securities" means any investment issued by, or the payment of principal and interest on, which is guaranteed by the government of any member state of the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) or any fixed interest investment issued in any OECD country by a public or local authority or nationalized industry of any OECD country or anywhere in the world by any other body which is, in the opinion of the trustee/custodian, of similar standing.*
- (2) *Government and other public securities will be regarded as being of a different issue if, even though they are issued by the same person, they are issued on different terms whether as to repayment dates, interest rates, the identity of the guarantor, or otherwise.*

### *Warrants and options*

- 7.6 (a) A scheme may invest in options and warrants for hedging purposes.
- (b) In addition to (a) above, the value of a scheme's investment in warrants and options not held for hedging purposes in terms of the total amount of premium paid may not exceed 15% of its total net asset value.
- 7.7 The writing of uncovered options is prohibited.
- 7.8 The writing of call options on portfolio investments may not exceed 25% of a scheme's total net asset value in terms of exercise price.

### *Futures and commodities*

- 7.9 A scheme may enter into financial futures contracts for hedging purposes.
- 7.10 In addition to 7.9, a scheme may enter into futures contracts on an unhedged basis provided that the net total aggregate value of contract prices, whether payable to or by the scheme under all outstanding futures contracts, together with the aggregate value of holdings of physical commodities and commodity based investments may not exceed 20% of the total net asset value of the scheme.

- Notes: (1) *"physical commodities" includes gold, silver, platinum or other bullion.*



- (2) "commodity based investments" does not include shares in companies engaged in producing, processing or trading in commodities.

#### *Investment in other schemes*

The following provisions govern the spread of investments in other collective investment schemes. 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, are not applicable to such investments, unless otherwise stated.

7.11 The value of a scheme's holding of units or shares in other collective investment schemes (namely "underlying schemes") which are non-recognized jurisdiction schemes and not authorized by the Commission may not in aggregate exceed 10% of its total net asset value.

7.11A A scheme may invest in one or more underlying schemes which are either recognized jurisdiction schemes or schemes authorized by the Commission. The value of a scheme's holding of units or shares in each such underlying scheme may not exceed 30% of its total net asset value, unless the underlying scheme is authorized by the Commission, and the name and key investment information of the underlying scheme are disclosed in the offering document of the scheme.

Note: The Commission has set out in the list of recognised jurisdictions those categories of recognised jurisdiction schemes that are eligible for investment pursuant to 7.11A.

7.11B In addition, each such underlying scheme's objective may not be to invest primarily in any investment prohibited by this Chapter, and where such scheme's objective is to invest primarily in investments restricted by this Chapter, such holdings may not be in contravention of the relevant limitation.

Notes: (1) Where a scheme exclusively invests in underlying schemes, it shall comply with the provisions in 8.1.

(2) The Commission generally does not require the management company to adopt a "see-through" approach in their investments in underlying schemes, except in the case where the underlying schemes are managed by the same management company as that of the scheme that invests in them, or by other companies within the same group that the management company belongs to, then 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3 are also applicable to investments of the underlying schemes.

#### Limitation on charges

7.11C Where a scheme invests in any underlying scheme(s) managed by the same management company or its connected persons, all initial charges on the underlying scheme(s) must be waived.

7.11D The management company of a scheme may not obtain a rebate on any fees or charges levied by an underlying scheme or its management company.

Note: 7.14 and 7.15 shall not apply to investments in underlying schemes made pursuant to 7.11.



- 7.12 Notwithstanding 7.11, a scheme may invest all of its assets in a single collective investment scheme and be authorized as a feeder fund. In this case:-
- (a) the underlying scheme must be authorized by the Commission;
  - (b) the offering document must state that:
    - (i) the scheme is a feeder fund into the underlying scheme;
    - (ii) for the purpose of complying with the investment restrictions, the scheme and its underlying fund will be deemed a single entity;
    - (iii) the scheme's annual report must include the investment portfolio of the underlying fund as at the financial year end date; and
    - (iv) the aggregate amount of all the fees and charges of the scheme and its underlying fund must be clearly disclosed;
  - (c) the borrowing of the feeder fund may not exceed 10% of its total net asset value and should be restricted to facilitating redemptions or defraying operating expenses; and

~~7.13(d)~~ No increase in the overall total of initial charges, management company's annual fee, or any other costs and charges payable to the management company or any of its connected persons borne by the holders or by the scheme may result, if the schemes in which a scheme invests are managed by the same management company or by a connected person of that company.

Note: The SFC may consider on a case-by-case basis allowing additional fees to be payable to the management company or its connected persons in respect of additional or different services and expertise provided by the management company or its connected persons for the benefit of the scheme.

7.13 ~~[deleted]~~

*Prohibition on real estate investments*

- 7.14 A scheme may not invest in any type of real estate (including buildings) or interests in real estate (including options or rights, but excluding shares in real estate companies and interests in real estate investment trusts (REITs) ~~that are listed on a stock exchange~~).

Note: In the case of investments in such shares and ~~listed~~ REITs, they shall comply with the investment limits as set out in ~~Chapters 7.1 and~~ 7.2, 7.3 and 7.11, where applicable.

*Short selling limitations*



7.15 No short sale may be made which will result in the scheme's liability to deliver securities exceeding 10% of its total net asset value.

7.16 The security which is to be sold short must be actively traded on a market where short selling activity is permitted [see Note to 7.3].

*Limitations on making loans*

7.17 A scheme may not lend, assume, guarantee, endorse or otherwise become directly or contingently liable for or in connection with any obligation or indebtedness of any person without the prior written consent of the trustee/custodian.

*Unlimited liability*

7.18 A scheme may not acquire any asset which involves the assumption of any liability which is unlimited.

*Limitations on securities in which directors/officers have interests*

7.19 A scheme may not invest in any security of any class in any company or body if any director or officer of the management company individually owns more than 0.5% of the total nominal amount of all the issued securities of that class, or, collectively the directors and officers of the management company own more than 5% of those securities.

*Limitations on nil-paid/partly paid securities*

7.20 The portfolio of a scheme may not include any security where a call is to be made for any sum unpaid on that security unless that call could be met in full out of cash or near cash by the scheme's portfolio, the amount of which has not already been taken into account for the purposes of 7.8.

*Limitations on borrowing*

7.21 The maximum borrowing of a scheme may not exceed 25% of its total net asset value (except for a capital markets scheme which may not exceed 10%). For the purposes of this section of ~~the~~ this UT Code, back-to-back loans do not count as borrowing.

*Applicability of restrictions to umbrella funds*

7.22 The provisions of this Chapter apply to each sub-fund of the umbrella fund as if each sub-fund were a single scheme, except for 7.2, where the total collective investment by the sub-funds in any ordinary shares issued by any single issuer may not exceed 10%.

*Breach of investment limits*

7.23 If the investment limits in Chapter 7 and 8 are breached, the management company should take as a priority objective all steps as are necessary within a reasonable period of time to remedy the situation, taking due account of the interests of the holders.



*Name of scheme*

- 7.24 If the name of the scheme indicates a particular objective, geographic region or market, the scheme should invest at least 70% of its non-cash assets in securities and other investments to reflect the particular objective or geographic region or market which the scheme represents.



## Chapter 8: Specialized schemes

This chapter sets out the guidelines for various types of specialized schemes. A specialized scheme means any scheme whose primary objective is not investment in equities and/or bonds, any scheme falling under the categories in this Chapter, or which otherwise does not meet the requirements of Chapter 7.

**For any scheme that has features falling within the scope of one or more specialized scheme(s) under this Chapter, the scheme shall comply with the relevant requirements under this Chapter where applicable. For example, where a guaranteed fund or index fund that seeks to achieve its investment objective through investment in, or use of, financial derivative instruments, the requirements regarding (i) collateral as set out in 8.8(e) of this UT Code and (ii) exposure to counterparty risk as set out in 8.8(d) of this UT Code must be complied with, in addition to requirements set out in 8.5 or 8.6 of this UT Code.**

In addition to the specialized schemes mentioned in this Chapter, application may be made for other specialized schemes pursuant to this Chapter. Each such scheme will be considered by the Commission on a case-by-case basis, **taking into account the applicable requirements set out in this Chapter and Chapter 7, or** pending the issue, if appropriate, of further guidelines.

### 8.1 Unit portfolio management funds

- (a) A scheme that invests all of its assets in other collective investment schemes may be authorized as a unit portfolio management fund (UPMF). A UPMF may hold cash for ancillary purposes and enter into financial futures contracts for hedging purposes.

#### *Investment and borrowing limitations*

- (b) Subject to 8.1(a), a UPMF may only invest in units/shares of schemes authorized by the Commission or in recognized jurisdiction schemes (whether authorized or not), except that not more than 10% of the UPMF's total net asset value may be invested in non-recognized jurisdiction schemes not authorized by the Commission.
- (c) Notwithstanding 8.1(b), no investment may be made in any scheme whose objective is to invest primarily in any investment prohibited by Chapter 7 of this **UT** Code. In the case of investments limited by Chapter 7, such holdings may not be in contravention of the relevant limitation.
- (d) A UPMF, except with the approval of the Commission, must invest in at least five schemes, and not more than 30% of its total net asset value may be invested in any one scheme.
- (e) A UPMF may not invest in another UPMF.
- (f) A UPMF may borrow up to 10% of its total net asset value but only on a temporary basis for the purpose for meeting redemption requests or defraying operating expenses.





- (g) A UPMF may not invest more than 10% of its total net asset value in warrant ~~funds, leveraged~~, and futures and options funds unless its primary objective is to invest in warrant, ~~leveraged~~, or futures and options funds, in which case the provisions applicable to such specialized funds in this Chapter will be extended to such UPMF, as appropriate.

*Limitation on charges*

- (h) Where a UPMF invests in schemes managed by the same management company or its connected persons, all initial charges on the underlying schemes must be waived.
- (i) The management company of a UPMF may not obtain a rebate on any fees or charges levied by an underlying scheme or its management company.

## **8.2 Money market / cash management funds**

- (a) A money market / cash management fund means a collective investment scheme, the sole objective of which is to invest in short-term deposits and debt securities.

*Offering document*

- (b) The offering document must clearly highlight that the purchase of a unit/share in a scheme is not the same as placing funds on deposit with a bank or deposit-taking company, that the management company has no obligation to redeem units/shares at the offer value and that the scheme is not subject to the supervision of the Hong Kong Monetary Authority.

*Name of scheme*

- (c) The scheme's name must not appear to draw a parallel between the scheme and the placement of cash on deposit.

*Filing requirement*

- (d) The scheme must file with the Commission within seven days from the last working day of each month details of the total funds subscribed to the scheme that month, and details of the total funds under management at the end of that month.

*Investment limitations*

- (e) Subject to the provisions below, a scheme may only invest in deposits and debt securities.
- (f) A scheme must maintain an average portfolio maturity not exceeding 90 days and must not purchase an instrument with a remaining maturity of more than ~~397 days one year~~, or two years in the case of Government and other public securities [see 7.5 Notes 1 & 2].



- (g) The aggregate value of a scheme's holding of instruments and deposits issued by a single issuer may not exceed 10% of the total net asset value of the scheme except:
  - (i) where the issuer is a substantial financial institution and the total amount does not exceed 10% of the issuer's issued capital and published reserves, the limit may be increased to 25%; or
  - (ii) in the case of Government and other public securities, up to 30% may be invested in the same issue; or
  - (iii) in respect of any deposit of less than US\$ 1,000,000 or its equivalent in the base currency of the scheme, where a scheme cannot otherwise diversify as a result of its size.

*Limitations on borrowing*

- (h) The scheme may borrow up to 10% of its total net asset value but only on a temporary basis for the purpose of meeting redemption requests or defraying operating expenses.

### **8.3 Warrant funds**

The following criteria apply to collective investment schemes, the principal objective of which is investment in warrants.

- (a) The core requirements in Chapter 7 will apply except for 7.2, 7.3, 7.6(b), 7.10, and 7.214.
- (b) The value of a scheme's holding of warrants issued by any single issuer may not exceed 10% of its total net asset value.

The following additional provisions will apply:-

*Investment limitations*

- (c) Not less than 90% of warrants held by the scheme must carry the right to acquire securities listed on a market [see Note to 7.3].
- (d) Investment in forward currency contracts and financial futures contracts is permissible for hedging purposes only.
- (e) Investment in physical commodities, including bullion, options on commodities and commodity based investments is prohibited [see Note(2) to 7.10].

*Limitations on borrowing*

- (f) The scheme may borrow up to 10% of its total net asset value but only on a temporary basis for the purpose of meeting redemption requests or defraying operating expenses.

*Offering document*



- (g) The offering document must explain the nature of warrants as an investment and contain a detailed description of the risks inherent in investment in warrants.
- (h) The offering document and any advertising material must contain the following warning:-

"Prices of warrants may fall just as fast as they may rise, therefore this scheme carries a significant risk of loss of capital. It is suitable only for those investors who can afford the risk involved."

*Name of scheme*

- (i) The word "Warrant" must appear in the name of the scheme.

## **8.4 [deleted]**

### ~~—8.4 Leveraged Fund~~

~~The following general criteria apply to leveraged funds. However, applicants for authorization of leveraged funds should note that additional criteria, including the maximum permitted leverage, will apply depending on the nature of the scheme, and would be advised to consult the Commission to discuss the specific principles applicable to a particular case.~~

- ~~(a) A scheme that utilises a borrowing capacity or other form of leverage greater than that permitted in Chapter 7 of this UT Code may, subject to this Chapter, be authorized as a leveraged fund.~~

#### ~~Limited Liability~~

- ~~(b) The liability of holders must be limited to their investment in the scheme.~~

#### ~~Specialist Expertise~~

- ~~(c) The management company (and, if applicable, the investment adviser) must satisfy the Commission that it is appropriately qualified in the type of leveraged investment of the scheme for which authorization is sought.~~

#### ~~Certification by Trustee/Custodian~~

- ~~(d) The trustee/custodian must certify to the Commission that suitable control procedures are in place for monitoring the maximum leverage of the scheme and any other conditions imposed by the Commission.~~

#### ~~Disclosure~~

- ~~(e) The offering document must carry a detailed explanation of the type of leverage to be utilised by the scheme and the risks inherent in such leverage.~~
- ~~(f) The offering document and any advertising material must contain a warning statement appropriate to the degree of risk inherent in the scheme.~~



~~(g) The word "leveraged" must appear in the name of the scheme.~~

## 8.4AA Futures and options funds

*The following criteria apply to collective investment schemes, the principal objective of which is investment in future contracts (including commodities and financial futures) and/or in options.*

### *Investment restrictions*

- (a) The scheme may only enter into futures and options contracts dealt with on a futures, commodities or options exchange or any over-the-counter derivative approved by the trustee/custodian.
- (b) At least 30% of the net asset value of the scheme must be held on deposit or invested in liquid short term debt instruments and may not be used for margin requirements. Not more than 70% of the net asset value of the scheme may be committed as margin for futures or options contracts, and/or premium paid for options purchased (including put and/or call options).
- (c) The scheme may not invest in commodity contracts other than commodity futures contracts. However, the scheme may acquire precious metals which are negotiable on an organized market.
- (d) Premiums paid to acquire options outstanding with identical characteristics may not exceed 5% of the net asset value of the scheme.
- (e) The scheme may not hold open contract positions in any futures contract month or option series for which the combined margin requirement represents 5% or more of the net asset value of the scheme.
- (f) The scheme may not hold open positions in futures or options contracts concerning a single commodity or a single underlying financial instrument for which the combined margin requirement represents 20% or more of the net asset value of the scheme.

### *Limitations on borrowing*

- (g) The scheme may borrow up to 10% of its total net asset value but only on a temporary basis for the purpose of meeting redemption requests or defraying operating expenses.

### *Limited liability*

- (h) The liability of holders must be limited to their investment in the scheme.

### *Specialist expertise*

- (i) The applicant management company (and, if applicable, the investment adviser) must satisfy the Commission that it has specific



experience in the field of futures and options. In determining the acceptability of the management company, the Commission may also consider the qualifications and experience of persons employed by the management company or the investment adviser. An applicant must provide details of the performance of all futures funds under its management or the management of the employees responsible for the applicant scheme for the preceding five years.

#### *Certification by trustee/custodian*

- (j) The trustee/custodian must certify to the Commission that suitable control procedures are in place for monitoring the investment restrictions of the scheme. The trustee/custodian must demonstrate that they have the relevant experience in this respect.

#### *Disclosure*

- (k) The offering document must:-
  - (i) provide a detailed explanation of the type(s) of futures contracts (and, if appropriate, options) that the scheme will invest in, the risks inherent in such investment and the trading strategy to be adopted;
  - (ii) disclose in one place all management, advisory and brokerage fees payable by the scheme; and
  - (iii) clearly disclose the nature and size of transaction costs that are expected to be incurred by the scheme and the implications of expected greater number of transactions on the amount of these costs.
- (l) The offering document and any advertising material must contain a warning statement appropriate to the degree of risk inherent in the scheme. The warning statement must be prominently displayed on the front cover of the offering document.
- (m) The words "leveraged", "futures" and/or "options" must appear in the name of the scheme.
- (n) The annual financial statements of the scheme must disclose the total transaction costs incurred.
- (o) Any advertisement must contain a statement that investors should refer to the risk factors set out in the offering document of the scheme.

#### *Acknowledgement*

- (p) The application form must, in a prominent place, contain an acknowledgement to be signed by the investor at the time of subscription confirming that he has read the offering document of the scheme and is fully aware of the nature of the scheme and the risks associated with it.



## 8.5 Guaranteed funds

The following criteria apply to collective investment schemes which contain a structure whereby a guaranteed amount will be paid to investors who hold units/shares in the scheme at a specified date in the future.

- (a) The core requirements in Chapter 7 and relevant provisions in Chapter 8 should apply to the scheme where appropriate, depending on the nature and the underlying investments of the scheme.

### *Guarantor*

- (b) The guarantor must be:
  - (i) a licensed banking institution authorized under the Banking Ordinance; or
  - (ii) an authorized insurer authorized under the Insurance Companies Ordinance.

*Note: The Commission may consider other substantial financial institutions to act as guarantor on a case-by-case basis. The Commission must be satisfied that the institution is, on an on-going basis, subject to regulatory supervision and of acceptable financial standing.*

### *Disclosure in the offering document*

Apart from the standard [disclosure contents](#) requirements in Appendix C, the offering document of the scheme must contain: -

- (c) Information about the guarantor
  - (i) its name;
  - (ii) nature of its business; and
  - (iii) information on its financial position, including paid-up share capital, total net assets or shareholders' funds, and where applicable, credit rating and any other relevant information.
- (d) Information about the guarantee
  - (i) the terms of the guarantee, including the scope and validity of the guarantee and the circumstances under which the guarantee may be terminated;

*Note: The deed of guarantee must form part of the offering document.*

- (ii) an illustration or description to clearly demonstrate the guarantee mechanism and how potential returns in excess of the guaranteed amount are calculated;



Notes: (1) *Where an indicative participation rate is shown, the illustration should use the quoted indicative rate as the basis for calculation.*

(2) *Assumptions used in the illustration should be clearly stated. It should be stated that the rates of return shown are for illustrative purpose only and that the actual return may be different.*

- (e) A detailed description of the nature of the underlying investments, including:
- (i) the proposed percentage, or an estimate thereof, of the scheme to be invested in fixed-interest securities and that in other investments at the time of publication of the offering document;
  - (ii) the issuers/counter-parties of the underlying investments, or the criteria for the selection of such parties;
  - (iii) the valuation methodology of the underlying investments;
  - (iv) the liquidation mechanism of the underlying investments to meet redemption requests; and
  - (v) where relevant, the participation rate or an estimate thereof at the time of publication of the offering document. It should be stated that the actual participation rate may be different from the indicative rate. An analysis of the factors that will impact on the final determination of such rate should also be given.

*Note: Where applicable, it should be stated when the actual participation rate will be determined and how such information will be communicated to investors.*

- (f) Risk warnings

These should include, but not limited to:

- (i) a statement to the effect that due to the guarantee structure, there will be a dilution of performance;
- (ii) a statement to the effect that potential returns in excess of the guaranteed amount are subject to investment risk and are not guaranteed;
- (iii) a statement to the effect that the scheme is subject to the credit risk of the guarantor and the issuers of the underlying investments;
- (iv) a statement to the effect that the scheme is subject to the liquidity risk of the underlying investments;
- (v) risks, if any, associated with conflicts of interest that may arise amongst different operating parties;



- (vi) a warning statement that the scope or validity of the guarantee may be affected under certain circumstances including, where relevant, the condition that the guarantee only applies to investors who hold their investments until the date specified in the guarantee and that dealings before such date are fully exposed to fluctuations in the value of the scheme's assets; and
- (vii) where applicable, the mechanism of any up-front charging fee structure and the cost implications to investors.

#### *Jurisdiction*

- (g) Nothing in the deed of guarantee may exclude the jurisdiction of the courts of Hong Kong to entertain an action concerning the scheme or the guarantee.

#### *Name of scheme*

- (h) The name of the scheme should accurately reflect the nature of the guarantee.

#### *Reporting Requirement*

- (i) The management company of the scheme should report to the Commission as soon as practicable if it becomes aware of any events which may affect the guarantee or undermine the ability of the guarantor to act as such.

*Note: Where the guarantor of a scheme is neither a licensed banking institution nor an authorized insurer as described in 8.5(b)(i) and (b)(ii) respectively, the manager of the scheme must notify the Commission on an annual basis the regulatory status of the guarantor.*

#### *Advertisements*

- (j) Any advertisement or marketing material must contain the following:
  - (i) the name of the guarantor;
  - (ii) where relevant, a statement that certain fees are charged up-front and the aggregate amount thereof;
  - (iii) where an indicative participation rate is quoted, the date of reference should be stated and there should be a warning that the actual participation rate may be different from the indicative rate;
  - (iv) the statement in 8.5(f)(vi) above; and
  - (v) a statement directing investors to read the offering document for further details of the guarantee.





## 8.6 Index funds

The following criteria apply to index funds.

### General

- (a) An index fund is a collective investment scheme, the principal objective of which is to track, replicate or correspond to an financial index or benchmark on equities, debts or other securities, with an aim of providing or achieving investment results or returns that closely match or correspond to the performance of the index.

~~Note: Where a scheme seeks to achieve its investment objective through investment in, or use of, financial derivative instruments, the requirements regarding (i) collateral as set out in 8.8(e) of this UT Code and (ii) exposure to counterparty risk as set out in 8.8(d), must be complied with.~~

- (b) An index fund may seek to track an index by one of the following strategies:

(i) full replication by investing all or substantially all of its assets in the constituents ~~securities~~ of the underlying index, broadly in proportion to the respective weightings of the constituents securities;

(ii) ~~Where the scheme invests in~~ a representative sampling by investing in a portfolio featuring a high correlation with the underlying index; and of constituent securities of the index, this should closely reflect the overall characteristics of the index.

*Note: The use of sampling where certain securities in the portfolio are not the constituent securities of the index is acceptable if the portfolio matches the characteristics of the index ~~and this method is necessary for the reduction of tracking error.~~*

~~(+)(iii)~~ Synthetic replication through the use of financial derivative instruments to replicate the index performance.

- ~~(b)(c)~~ In achieving its investment objective, the scheme may invest in other appropriate investment instruments, such as derivatives permitted under ~~the~~ this UT Code or otherwise accepted by the Commission, in accordance with the scheme's disclosed investment strategies and restrictions.

~~(c)(a)~~ Where the management company of the index fund adopts a synthetic replication strategy, the requirements set out under 8.8 of this UT Code regarding structured funds are also applicable.

- ~~(e)(d)~~ In general, the Commission will consider authorizing an index fund only if the underlying index is acceptable to the Commission. Such acceptance does not imply official approval or endorsement of the



index. The Commission reserves the right to withdraw the authorization if the index is no longer considered acceptable.

*Note: The management company should immediately consult the Commission if for any reasons the index might likely cease or has ceased to be acceptable. The management company should as a priority objective propose remedial actions or alternatives that are acceptable to the Commission.*

### Acceptable Indices

~~(d)~~(e) The acceptability of an index will be assessed on the following criteria:

- (i) The index should have a clearly defined objective and/or the market or sector it aims to represent should be clear.

*Note: The Commission must be satisfied that the index appropriately reflects the characteristics of the market or sector. The index should be able to reflect the price movements in its underlying constituents and change the composition and weightings of these constituents to reflect changes in the underlying market or sector. The Commission may, where relevant, request information on the market capitalisation of the constituent securities in relation to the total value of the market or sector that an index purports to represent.*

- (ii) The index should in general be broadly based.

*Note: An index with a single constituent security weighing more than 40% or with its top five constituent securities weighing more than 75% would generally be considered too concentrated. Exceptions may be made on a case by case basis, particularly where the constituent securities are Government or other public securities.*

- (iii) The index should be investible, where applicable.

*Note: The Commission expects that the constituent securities should be sufficiently liquid (taking into account their respective weightings and trading volume), and may be readily acquired or disposed of under normal market circumstances and in the absence of trading restrictions.*

- (iv) The index should be transparent and published in an appropriate manner.

*Note: The latest index level and other important news should be either published in Hong Kong daily newspapers or conveniently accessible by investors (for example, by enquiring of the Hong Kong Representative or through relevant websites). The Commission may also consider*



*whether the index is easily accessible through market data vendors.*

- (v) The index should be objectively calculated and rules-based.  
The index provider is expected to possess the necessary expertise and technical resources to construct, maintain and review the methodology/rules of the index. The methodology/rules should be well documented, consistent and transparent.

*Note: The Commission may request the submission of the methodology/rules of the index.*

#### *Reporting requirements*

- ~~(e)~~(f) The Commission should be consulted on any events that may affect the acceptability of the index. Significant events relating to the index should be notified to the holders as soon as practicable. These may include a change in the methodology/rules for compiling or calculating the index, or a change in the objective or characteristics of the index.

#### *Investment restrictions*

- ~~(f)~~(g) The core requirements in Chapter 7 will apply with the following modifications or exceptions as set out in the following (h)(i) and (ii) and paragraph 11 of Appendix I of this UT Code - Guidelines for Regulating Index Tracking Exchange Traded Funds.
- ~~(g)~~(h) Notwithstanding ~~Chapter~~ 7.1, more than 10% of the net asset value of an index fund may be invested in constituent securities issued by a single issuer provided that:
- (i) it is limited to any constituent securities that each accounts for more than 10% of the weighting of the index; and
  - (ii) the scheme's holding of any such constituent securities may not exceed their respective weightings in the index, except where weightings are exceeded as a result of changes in the composition of the index and the excess is only transitional and temporary in nature.

*Note: A waiver of (h)(ii) may be granted on a case-by-case basis, after considering factors including whether the waiver is necessary for the scheme to achieve its objective to track the index.*

- ~~(h)~~(i) Subject to 8.6 (hg) and (h)(i) above, the 30% limit in ~~Chapter~~ 7.4 may be exceeded. ~~Furthermore, subject to (h) above, and~~ an index fund may invest all of its assets in Government and other public securities in any number of different issues despite ~~Chapter~~ 7.5.

#### *Disclosure*



~~(i)~~(i) In addition to the requirements under Appendix C, the offering document of an index fund must make the following disclosure and warnings:-

- (i) a description of the market or sector the index aims to represent;
- (ii) the characteristics and general composition of the index and, where applicable, concentration in any economic sectors and/or issuers;
- (iii) the weightings of the top 10 largest constituent securities of the index as of a date within a month of the date of the offering document;
- (iv) where necessary, a statement to the effect that the investment of the scheme may be concentrated in the securities of a single issuer or several issuers;
- (v) a warning of lack of discretion to adapt to market changes due to the inherent investment nature of index funds and that falls in the index are expected to result in corresponding falls in the value of the scheme;
- (vi) a statement to the effect that there is no guarantee or assurance of exact or identical replication at any time of the performance of the index;
- (vii) circumstances that may lead to tracking errors and the related risks, and strategies employed in minimising such errors;
- (viii) a brief description of the index methodology/rules and/or the means by which investors may obtain such information (for example, by providing the website address of the index provider);
- (ix) the means by which investors may obtain the latest index information and other important news of the index;
- (x) a warning that index composition may change and securities may be delisted;
- (xi) any circumstances that may affect the accuracy and completeness in the calculation of the index;
- (xii) a warning in relation to any licensing conditions (including indemnity given to the index provider, if any) for using the index, and the contingency plan in the event of cessation of the availability of the index;
- (xiii) a statement on whether the index provider and the management company of the scheme (or its connected persons) are independent of each other. If not, the means by which possible conflicts of interests may be addressed;



- (xiv) the Commission reserves the right to withdraw the authorization of the scheme if the index is no longer considered acceptable; and
- (xv) any other information which is relevant and material for investors to make an informed investment decision.

#### *Replacement of the underlying index*

~~(j)~~(k) Following the authorization of the scheme, a replacement of the underlying index may only be made in accordance with the provisions of its constitutive document and with the prior approval of the Commission.

*Note: A replacement of the underlying index may be necessary under circumstances including where the index is no longer available or considered acceptable.*

#### *Financial statements*

~~(k)~~(l) The interim and annual financial statements of the scheme must disclose a list of those constituent securities, if any, that each accounts for more than 10% of the weighting of the index as at the end of the relevant period and their respective weightings. The statements must also provide a comparison of the scheme performance and the actual index performance over the relevant period.

#### *Name of scheme*

~~(l)~~(m) The name of the scheme must reflect the nature of an index fund.

*Note: The words “index”, “tracking” and/or “tracker” are expected to appear in the name of the scheme.*

## **8.7 Hedge funds**

#### *Foreword*

The following criteria apply to collective investment schemes that are commonly known as hedge funds (or alternative investment funds or absolute return funds). Hedge funds are generally regarded as non-traditional funds that possess different characteristics and utilize different investment strategies from traditional funds. In considering an application for authorization, the Commission will, among other things, consider the following:

- (i) the choice of asset class; and
- (ii) the use of alternative investment strategies such as long/short exposures, leverage, and/or hedging and arbitrage techniques.

Due to the wide array of schemes that may fall under this category, the Commission will exercise its discretion in imposing additional conditions to each scheme on a case-by-case basis as appropriate.



Where a scheme invests all its non-cash assets in other hedge funds, it may be authorized as a fund of hedge funds (FoHFs).

Where a scheme has a capital guarantee feature, it may be authorized as a capital guaranteed hedge fund. In this case, provisions of ~~Chapters~~ 8.5 and 8.7 may apply to the scheme where relevant, depending on the nature of the scheme.

Unless otherwise specified, the provisions in other Chapters of ~~the~~ this UT Code shall apply. Where the provisions refer to the scheme, this means the applicant scheme.

#### *The management company*

- (a) The management company of a scheme must satisfy the requirements set out in Chapter 5 unless otherwise specified in this Chapter. For the avoidance of doubt, the Commission will consider, among others, the following factors when assessing the acceptability of the management company:
  - (i) The management company must have the requisite competence, expertise and appropriate risk management and internal controls systems. It must also be adequately and suitably staffed in order to properly manage the risks and operational issues in connection with its hedge funds business;
  - (ii) the experience of the key investment personnel of the management company and those of the investment adviser (where the latter has been delegated the investment management function) in managing hedge funds;

*Note: The key personnel of the management company of either a single hedge fund<sup>1</sup> or a FoHFs must be dedicated full-time staff with a demonstrable track record in the management of hedge funds.*

*The Commission will take into account various factors in assessing the acceptability of the key personnel for a scheme. These factors may vary from a single hedge fund to a FoHFs having regard to the different strategies and operational differences of these funds.*

*There must be at least two key personnel in the management company each having at least five years' relevant experience. The management company must demonstrate that out of these five years' relevant experience, the two key personnel must each have at least two years' specific experience:*

- (a) *In the case of a single hedge fund manager, the Commission will normally consider it acceptable*

---

<sup>1</sup> "Single hedge fund" in the context of ~~Chapter~~ 8.7 means hedge funds that are not in the form of FoHFs.



*if each of the two key personnel has at least two years' specific investment management experience in the same strategy as that of the scheme.*

- (b) *In the case of a FoHFs manager, the Commission will normally consider it acceptable if each of the two key personnel has at least two years' specific investment management experience as a FoHFs manager.*

*A key personnel may satisfy this five years' relevant experience by a combination of both ~~of~~ his specific experience mentioned above and general experience relating to hedge funds. With respect to general experience, the Commission will normally consider the following types of experience acceptable:*

- (1) *proprietary trading experience in securities, derivatives or other investment instruments which are of a similar nature to those contemplated by the scheme; or*
- (2) *carrying out investment strategies in the context of investment management or securities dealing business in similar nature to the one contemplated for the scheme; or*
- (3) *prior experience in evaluating or selecting hedge funds for investment purposes.*

~~However, g~~*General experience acquired through academic research, sales or marketing or back-office administration of hedge funds is unlikely to be considered acceptable for meeting the requirement in ~~Chapter~~ 8.7(a).*

*For the avoidance of doubt, to the extent that ~~Chapter~~ 5.5(a) requires the key personnel to possess specific public funds experience, this requirement may be satisfied if the management company on a firm-wide basis is able to demonstrate that it possesses the requisite experience and resources to administer public funds.*

*The Commission may require independent substantiation of the management experience and track record of the key personnel, the management company and the group companies (where appropriate).*

*The experience requirement of the investment personnel of the underlying funds of a FoHFs is set out in the "Fund of Hedge Funds" section below.*

- (iii) amount of assets under management;

*Note: The Commission would generally expect at least US\$100 million for the total amount of assets under*



*management that follow hedge fund strategies. While assets under management may include proprietary funds, the Commission will generally look for experience in managing third-party funds.*

- (iv) the risk management profile and internal control systems of the management company; and

*Note: The management company must have in place suitable internal controls and risk management systems commensurate with the company's business and risk profile, including a clear risk management policy and written control procedures.*

*It must continuously deploy such necessary resources and be vigilant to ensure that all the relevant risks in connection with the management of the scheme are properly monitored and controlled in accordance with the investment strategy of the scheme.*

*The management company must demonstrate that those representatives and agents (including for example, administrators, custodian, brokers, valuation agents) appointed by it possess sufficient know-how and experience in dealing with hedge funds.*

*In the case of the management of a FoHFs, the management company must:*

- (a) *have in place a due diligence process for the selection of the underlying funds and on-going monitoring of their activities;*
- (b) *demonstrate its ability to assess and monitor the performance of the managers of the underlying funds, and the ability to replace the underlying funds whenever necessary to protect the interests of holders; and*
- (c) *submit a plan to explain its due diligence and on-going monitoring processes (containing, among others, the frequency of reporting and evaluation of the underlying funds, and measures adopted by the management company to ensure investment and operational risks of the underlying funds are analysed and controlled) and include a summary of the plan in the offering document of the scheme.*

*The management company must ensure that its risk management process is able to deal with normal and exceptional circumstances including extreme market conditions.*

*The management company must take all reasonable care in the selection of its distribution agents engaged in the selling of hedge funds and provide all necessary*





*information and training to these agents for the purpose of selling the scheme.*

- (v) the investment management operations of the scheme must be based in a jurisdiction with an inspection regime acceptable to the Commission.

*Note: Whilst reference would be made to the list of acceptable inspection regimes ~~set out in~~ published on the Commission's website Appendix A2, it is noted that the regulation of offshore hedge funds vs. onshore funds may be different in some jurisdictions. The acceptability of an inspection regime ~~for in the context of a scheme~~ that is subject to such regime and is seeking SFC authorization may need to be considered on a case-by-case basis.*

#### *Prime broker*

- (b) Where a scheme appoints a prime broker, the following shall apply:
  - (i) the prime broker must be a substantial financial institution subject to prudential regulatory supervision;
  - (ii) where assets of the scheme are charged to the prime broker for financing purpose, such assets must not, at any time, exceed the level of the scheme's indebtedness to the prime broker;

*Note: Where assets of the scheme may be used as collateral or security for financing to be provided by the prime broker, disclosure must be made in the offering document of the risks associated with the collateralisation, for example, foreclosure or re-hypothecation of these assets by the prime broker and any consequential impact to the scheme and its investors.*

- (iii) the assets charged to the prime broker must remain in a segregated custody account, in the name or held to the order of the trustee/custodian; and
- (iv) the scheme's offering document must disclose the profile of the prime broker and its relationship with the scheme.

*Note: Before a prime broker is appointed by the scheme, the scheme or the management company (as the case may be) must conduct due diligence on the prime broker and be reasonably satisfied with the prime broker's suitability and competence.*

*Apart from disclosing the profile of the prime broker, the offering document must disclose the role(s) of the prime broker in relation to the hedge fund, whether the prime broker is subject to any regulatory supervision, and if so, a brief description of its licensing status in the relevant jurisdiction.*



*Where appropriate, disclosure of the risks relating to any conflicts of interest between the prime broker and the scheme has to be made in the offering document.*

#### *Minimum subscription*

- (c) The minimum level of initial subscription by each investor in a scheme must not be less than US\$50,000\*, except for FoHFs, where the minimum initial subscription must not be less than US\$10,000\*. No minimum subscription level will apply to a scheme which provides at least 100% capital guarantee.

*(\* ) or the currency equivalent*

#### *Limited liability*

- (d) The liability of holders must be limited to their investment in the scheme and this must be clearly stated in the offering document.
- (e) Where the scheme is a sub-fund of an umbrella fund, the scheme will be required to demonstrate to the Commission that there are legally enforceable provisions to ring-fence the scheme assets from the liabilities of other sub-funds. A brief description of such ring-fencing arrangement must be made in the offering document.

*Note: The Commission may require an independent legal opinion or regulatory confirmation regarding the enforceability of the ring-fencing provisions.*

#### *Investment and borrowing restrictions*

- (f) The scheme must have a set of clearly defined investment and borrowing parameters in its constitutive and offering documents. The offering document must clearly explain the types of financial instruments in which the scheme will invest; the extent of diversification or concentration of investments or strategies; the extent and basis of leverage (including the maximum level of leverage); and the related risk implications of the investment and borrowing parameters.
- (g) The core requirements in Chapter 7 will not apply except for [7.42162](#), [7.13](#), [7.141417](#), [7.171720](#), [7.181821](#), [7.2222-25](#) and [7.232326](#).

#### *Name of scheme*

- (h) If the name of the scheme indicates a particular objective, geographic region or market, the scheme must utilize at least 70% of its non-cash assets for the purposes of pursuing the objective or geographic region or market.

#### *Performance fees*

- (i) If a performance fee is levied, the scheme must comply with [Chapter 6.47178](#). Full and clear disclosure of the calculation methodology must be set out in its offering document.



**Chapter 6.17178** does not apply to the underlying funds of a FoHFs. For FoHFs, the offering document of the scheme must disclose whether a performance fee is levied at both the scheme level and the underlying funds level. It must also summarize the bases of how performance fees are calculated and paid by the underlying funds. Appropriate warnings must be made in the offering document about the possibility of charging performance fees at various levels within a FoHFs and the implications to investors.

*Note: The Commission notes that various methodologies may be used for the charging and accrual of performance fees based on the basic principle in **Chapter 6.17178**.*

*The Commission may require illustrative examples to be given in the offering document to demonstrate the charging method where it considers appropriate.*

*Where a scheme intends to achieve equalisation for the calculation of performance fees, its offering document must disclose the mechanisms adopted to achieve equalisation.*

*Where the scheme does not intend to achieve equalisation of performance fees, its offering document must clearly disclose this fact and how the absence of equalisation may affect the amount of performance fees to be borne by investors.*

#### *Fund of hedge funds*

The following provisions apply to FoHFs in lieu of the provisions of **Chapter 8.1**.

- (j) The FoHFs must comply with the following:
  - (i) a FoHFs must invest in at least five underlying funds, and not more than 30% of its total net asset value may be invested in any one underlying fund; and

*Note: One of the underlying assumptions of a FoHFs is that it can achieve diversification through investing in a range of funds that employ different investment strategies and/or utilise the skills of different fund managers.*

*Any scheme applying for authorisation as a FoHFs should clearly explain its diversification strategy in the offering document.*

*A FoHFs authorised pursuant to ~~the~~ this UT Code is expected to achieve investment return through the performance of its underlying funds rather than direct investments in securities, futures, options, derivatives, currency or other investments through proprietary trading or “managed accounts”. It is therefore generally not acceptable for a FoHF to carry out proprietary*



*trading directly or through the use of “managed accounts”.*

- (ii) a FoHFs may not invest in another FoHFs.
- (k) The management company of the FoHFs must ensure that:
  - (i) each of the key personnel of the management company of an underlying fund possesses at least two years’ experience in the relevant hedge fund investment strategy, provided however that up to 10% of the net asset value of the FoHFs may comprise of underlying funds managed by investment personnel with less experience;
  - (ii) there is an independent trustee/custodian to safe keep the assets of the underlying funds;
  - (iii) where a FoHFs invests in underlying funds managed by the same management company or its connected persons, all initial charges on such underlying funds are waived;
  - (iv) neither the management company of the FoHFs nor its connected persons retain a rebate (whether in cash or in kind) on any fees or charges levied by such underlying funds, their management company or any of their connected persons;
  - (v) the offering document of the FoHFs clearly discloses the aggregate amount or give an indicative range of all the fees and charges of the FoHFs and each of its underlying funds; and
  - (vi) where the FoHFs invests in hedge funds not authorized by the SFC, such fact is disclosed in the offering document of the FoHFs. A warning must be included to the effect that some or all of the underlying funds of the FoHFs and their fund managers are not subject to the regulation of the Commission and that such funds may not be subject to rules similar to those of the Commission that are designed to protect investors.

#### *Dealing*

- (l) There must be at least one regular dealing day per month.
- (m) The maximum interval between the lodgement of a properly documented redemption request for redemption of units/shares (whether a notice period is required or not) and the payment of redemption money to the holder may not exceed 90 calendar days.

*Note: A scheme may only effect redemption in specie with the prior consent of individual redeeming holder. The offering document must disclose the possibility of redemption in specie and the need to obtain prior consent from an individual holder for making such redemption.*



*A scheme may not effect compulsory redemption except where the management company is reasonably satisfied that it is in the overall benefit of the scheme to do so. Examples where the management may effect compulsory redemption include the circumstances where the continuous holding of the scheme's interest by a particular holder will cause the scheme to be in breach of any laws or regulations governing the scheme, or result in adverse financial consequences to the scheme such as tax penalties.*

*Subject to the foregoing, the offering document must disclose the circumstances under which compulsory redemption may be effected and the length of notice for such redemption.*

- (n) The offering document of the scheme must include a warning to the effect that the redemption price may be affected by the fluctuations in value of the underlying investments during the period between the lodgement of the redemption request and the date when the redemption price is calculated.

#### *Valuation*

- (o) The investments of the scheme must be independently and fairly valued on a regular basis. Where appropriate, generally accepted accounting principles and industry's best practices should be applied on a consistent basis.

*Note: It is incumbent upon the management company to demonstrate that the scheme's investments will be independently and fairly valued.*

*In considering whether the management company is able to demonstrate that a scheme's investments are independently valued, the Commission may take into account a number of factors including the following:*

- a) *The duties and functions of the party carrying out the valuation (the "valuation agent") is expected to be segregated from those of the party carrying out the investment management function for the scheme e.g. the appointment of an independent administrator. Disclosure of how the segregation is achieved must be made in the offering document;*
- b) *There should be checks and balances to ensure that the valuation process and policy is consistently followed;*
- c) *The pricing data should be gathered from reliable sources;*
- d) *Where necessary, safeguarding measures should be implemented for the valuation to be carried out independently; and*
- e) *The selection of the valuation agent by the management company is based on due process.*



*Disclosure must be made of (1) the selection criteria of the valuation agent and the relationship between the management company, its group of companies and the valuation agent; and (2) any limitations and constraints of the valuation policies and methodologies.*

*The above factors are not exhaustive and the Commission may take into account other relevant factors in assessing the compliance with the independence requirement.*

- (p) Full particulars of the valuation frequency, the valuation methods of the scheme's investments, the identity and qualifications of the valuation agent(s), the experience of the valuation agent(s) in evaluating hedge fund assets and the relationship of the agent(s) with the scheme's management company or its group of companies and, where applicable, with the prime broker must be disclosed in the offering document.
- (q) The offering document of the scheme must include a warning to the effect that some of the underlying investments of the scheme may not be actively traded and there may be uncertainties involved in the valuation of such investments. Potential investors must be warned that under such circumstances, the net asset value of the scheme may be adversely affected.

#### *Disclosure*

- (r) The front cover of the offering document must display prominently the following warning statements:
  - (i) the scheme uses alternative investment strategies and the risks inherent in the scheme are not typically encountered in traditional funds;
  - (ii) the scheme undertakes special risks which may lead to substantial or total loss of investment and is not suitable for investors who cannot afford to take on such risks;
  - (iii) investors are advised to consider their own financial circumstances and the suitability of the scheme as part of their investment portfolio; and
  - (iv) investors are advised to read this offering document and should obtain professional advice before subscribing to the scheme.

*Note: The text of the warning statements may be varied but the message must be clear and not disguised.*

- (s) For the purpose of ~~Chapter~~ 6.1, the offering document must disclose all relevant matters relating to the investment operations and risk management aspects of the scheme and give lucid explanations of the investment strategy of the scheme and the risks inherent in the scheme.



*Note: For example, explanations should be given on the nature of the scheme; the markets covered; the instruments used; the risk and reward characteristics of the strategy; the circumstances under which the scheme would work best and the circumstances hostile to the performance of the scheme; the risk management and internal control mechanism, including the setting of investment and borrowing parameters to control the risks; the terms of the offering; the on-going monitoring of the scheme's investment and asset allocation process and the performance of the scheme; the on-going monitoring of the standards of the services provided by key service providers, for example, prime brokers and administrators and the replacement process of these service providers and the responsibilities of each of the relevant parties.*

*The offering document should be written in plain language. The Commission specifically encourages the use of a glossary to explain technical terms.*

*Details of unauthorized funds must not be shown in the offering document. Where names of such funds are mentioned, these must be clearly marked as unauthorized and not available to Hong Kong residents.*

- (t) The management company must disclose the measures and safeguards put in place for the management of conflicts of interest in relation to the operation of the scheme.
- (u) All advertisements must prominently display the warning statements referred to in 8.7(r) above.

#### *Application form*

- (v) All application forms of the scheme must state prominently that the scheme is a hedge fund and there are special risks involved with investment in the scheme, and direct investors to read the offering document.

#### *Financial reports*

- (w) The management company must issue regular reports to holders on the scheme activities at least on a quarterly basis. Reports must be prepared and distributed in accordance with the Guidelines on Hedge Funds Reporting Requirements [see Appendix H].

## **8.8 Structured funds**

The following general criteria shall apply to a collective investment scheme, known as structured fund, which seeks to achieve its investment objective primarily through investing substantially in financial derivative instruments, for example swap or market access products or repo agreements or similar arrangements. A structured fund is passively managed and usually tracks the performance of an index and/or offers structured pay-outs when certain pre-



determined conditions are met. The provisions in other Chapters of this UT Code shall apply where appropriate.

Note: The requirements under 8.9 of this UT Code are intended to apply to actively managed funds that invest in financial derivative instruments to gain exposure by investing in different derivatives and therefore are not applicable to structured funds other than those under 8.9(f) of this UT Code.

(a) The management company of a structured fund and the issuer of financial derivative instruments shall be independent of each other.

Notes: (1) The management company cannot also act as the issuer of financial derivative instruments.

(2) The index adopted by the scheme shall be objectively calculated, measurable and transparent to the public, for instance, the index is rules-based with minimal or no discretion exercisable by the issuer of the financial derivative instruments, and the index level or its calculation formula is accessible by the public. Where such index is provided for the use of the structured fund only, this would raise questions as to the propriety of the fund seeking exposure to such index.

(b) Where the scheme is a mutual fund company, the majority of the board of directors of the scheme shall be independent directors (for example, persons who are not employees or officers of the derivative counterparty).

(c) The valuation of the financial derivative instruments has to be marked-to-market and conducted independently daily. There shall be regular, reliable and verifiable valuation conducted by the manager or trustee or their delegate independent of the issuer of financial derivative instruments, through measures such as the establishment of a valuation committee or engagement of third party services. Further, the calculation agent/ fund administrator should be adequately equipped with the necessary resources to conduct independent marked-to-market valuation and to verify the valuation of the financial derivative instruments on a regular basis;

(d) Collateral has to be provided to limit the exposure of the scheme to the counterparty risk of the issuer of financial derivative instruments to no more than 10% of the net asset value of the scheme.

Note: The management company shall demonstrate, where appropriate, with proper legal opinion in support, the collateral is held by the trustee / custodian of the fund and must be readily accessible / enforceable by it without further recourse to the issuer of the financial derivative instruments.

(e) Collateral must meet the following requirements:

(i) Liquidity - sufficiently liquid in order that it can be sold quickly at a robust price that is close to pre-sale valuation. Collateral





should normally trade in a deep and liquid marketplace with transparent pricing. In addition, collateral with short settlement cycles are preferable;

- (ii) Valuation - mark to market daily;
- (iii) Issuer credit quality – of high credit quality; collateral on assets that exhibit high price volatility may be accepted only if suitably conservative haircuts are in place;
- (iv) Diversification – must not be appropriately diversified so as to avoid concentrated exposure to any single issuer in one issue, sector or country. The counterparty or other investment limit/exposure of the collateral as a percentage of a scheme's net asset value must not contravene the investment restrictions or limitations set out in Chapter 7;

*Note: By way of illustration, the value of collateral and the scheme's investment, if any, issued by any single issuer / corporate group may not exceed 10% of the scheme's net asset value. Where the collateral is in the form of government and other public securities, 7.4 and 7.5 apply.*

- (v) Correlation – correlation between the issuer of the financial derivative instruments and the collateral received must be avoided;
- (vi) Management of operational and legal risks – there must be in existence appropriate systems, operational capabilities and legal expertise for proper collateral management;
- (vii) Independent custody – must be held by the trustee or custodian of the scheme;
- (viii) Enforceability – must be readily accessible / enforceable by the trustee/custodian of the scheme without further recourse to the issuer of the financial derivative instruments; and
- (ix) Not available for secondary recourse – collateral cannot be applied for any purpose except for the purpose of being used as collateral.

*Note: Structured products whose payouts rely on embedded derivatives or synthetic instruments or securities issued by special purpose vehicles, special investment vehicles or similar entities, shall not be invested by the fund or held as collateral to cover or reduce the counterparty exposure.*

- (f) The management company has to put in place detailed contingency plans regarding credit events like significant downgrading of credit rating and the collapse of the issuer of financial derivative instruments.
- (g) Where the aggregate value of all collateral held by a scheme represents 30% or more of its net assets value, it shall publish or disclose in the



scheme's annual and interim reports a description of collateral holdings as required under Appendix E. website the nature of such collateral as at each quarter end within one month after the relevant quarter. The relevant content requirement of collateral information for publication is stated in Appendix E of this UT Code.

#### Disclosure

- (h) In addition to the information in Appendix C of this UT Code, the offering document must contain the following:
- (i) disclosure of the structure of the scheme, in plain language and supplemented by visual aids and diagrams (where appropriate);
  - (ii) description of any potential conflicts of interest and the related risks arising from the same entity or entities within the same group acting in different capacities in relation to the scheme; and
  - (iii) description of any other relevant risks (legal or otherwise) arising from the structure of the scheme.

### **8.9 Funds that invests in financial derivative instruments**

The following general criteria shall apply to a non-UCITS scheme which seeks to acquire financial derivative instruments for investment purposes, but does not meet the specific criteria set out in respect of other scheme types in this chapter or relevant provisions in Chapter 7. For the avoidance of doubt, the scheme shall also comply with provisions in Chapter 7 other than those in respect of financial derivative instruments which are aggregated and covered under 8.9.

UCITS schemes that use financial derivative instruments for investment purposes have already complied with the relevant UCITS requirements and thus are not required to comply with 8.9 except for the disclosure requirements set out in 8.9(i) and (k).

#### Financial Derivative Instruments Investments and Related Operational Requirements

- (a) A scheme may acquire financial derivative instruments for investment purpose subject to the limit that the scheme's global exposure relating to these financial derivative instruments does not exceed 100% of the total net asset value of the scheme.
- (b) For the purpose of calculating global exposure, the commitment approach shall be used, whereby the derivative positions of a scheme are converted into the equivalent position in the underlying assets embedded in those derivatives, taking into account the prevailing value of the underlying assets, the counterparty risk, future market movements and the time available to liquidate the positions.
- (c) Before undertaking any investment within this category, the management company must have put in place suitable and adequate risk management and control systems to monitor, measure, and



manage all the relevant risks in relation to the scheme. The risk management and control systems must (i) be commensurate with the nature and scale of the financial derivative investment activities that it undertakes for the scheme, bearing in mind the retail nature and risk profile of the scheme and (ii) be able to deal with normal and exceptional circumstances including extreme market conditions. The management company must maintain at all times such risk management and control systems.

- (d) The management company must at all times be adequately and suitably staffed in order to properly implement its risk management policy and procedures.
- (e) The management company must at all times demonstrate that those representatives and agents (including for example, administrators, custodian, brokers, valuation agents) appointed by it possess sufficient know-how, expertise and experience in dealing with the underlying investments of the scheme.
- (f) The financial derivative instruments invested by a scheme may be either listed/quoted on a stock exchange or dealt in over-the-counter, provided that:
- (i) the underlying consists solely of shares in companies, debt securities, money market instruments, units/shares of collective investment schemes, deposits with substantial financial institutions, government and other public securities and physical commodities (primarily precious metals such as gold, silver, platinum or other bullion), financial indices, interest rates, foreign exchange rates or currencies, in which the scheme may invest according to its investment objectives and policies;
  - (ii) the counterparties to over-the-counter derivative transactions or their guarantors are substantial financial institutions; and
  - (iii) the valuation of the over-the-counter derivatives is marked-to-market daily, are subject to regular, reliable and verifiable valuation on a daily basis and can be sold, liquidated or closed by an offsetting transaction at any time at their fair value at the scheme's initiative. [see also 8.8(c)]
- (g) The risk exposure to a counterparty of a scheme in an over-the-counter derivative transaction may not exceed 10% of its net asset value.
- (h) To limit the exposure to each counterparty as set out in (g) above, the scheme may receive collateral from such issuer, provided that the collateral complies with the requirements set out in 8.8(e).
- (i) For the avoidance of doubt, financial derivative instruments acquired for hedging purposes will not be counted towards the 100% limit referred to in 8.9(a) above.

### Disclosure



- (j) The offering document shall contain information in plain language to facilitate investors' understanding of the scheme's investment strategy and risk profile, including:
- (i) additional risk disclosures including the risks associated with investments in financial derivative instruments;
  - (ii) a statement indicating how and where information regarding the risk management and control policy, procedures and methods employed by the scheme will be made available to Hong Kong investors upon request; and
  - (iii) a summary of the risk management policy and methods employed by the scheme to effectively measure and manage the risks associated with the investments in financial derivative instruments.
- (k) The collateral disclosure requirements in 8.8(g) above shall also be complied with by a scheme falling under 8.9.

~~Note: The provisions in 8.9(i) and (k) above shall apply to both non-UCITS schemes falling under 8.9 and UCITS schemes using financial derivative instruments for investment purposes.~~



## Chapter 9: Additional requirements for Non-Hong Kong based schemes

### Appointment of representative

- 9.1 A ~~scheme management company~~ will be required to appoint a Representative in Hong Kong if its ~~management company~~ is not incorporated and does not have a place of business in Hong Kong.
- 9.2 If a Representative is appointed, the scheme has to maintain the Representative throughout the period it is authorised in Hong Kong.

### Functions of a representative

- 9.3 The Representative is not required to take responsibility for the acts and omissions of the management company or, in the case of the scheme being a company, the directors of the scheme. It must, however, be authorized on behalf of the scheme and the management company to:-
- (a) receive applications and money for units/shares from persons in Hong Kong;
  - (b) issue receipts in respect of the application moneys received in accordance with (a);
  - (c) issue contract notes to the applicants in accordance with the terms of the scheme;
  - (d) receive redemption notices, transfer instructions and conversion notices from holders for immediate transmission to the management company or the scheme;
  - (e) accept any notices or correspondence, including service of process, which holders may wish to serve on the scheme, trustee/custodian or the management company;
  - (f) notify the Commission immediately if redemption of units/shares ceases, or is suspended;
  - (g) make available for public inspection in Hong Kong, free of charge, and offer for sale at a reasonable price copies of all constitutive documents of the scheme;
  - (h) provide holders with information on the scheme including the scheme's financial reports and sales literature;
  - (i) deliver to the Commission, if it requests, all accounts and records relating to the sale and redemption of units/shares of the scheme in Hong Kong; and
  - (j) represent the scheme and the management company in relation to all matters in which any holder normally resident in Hong Kong has a pecuniary interest or which relate to units/shares sold in Hong Kong.



## Criteria for appointment

- 9.4 ~~The management company is encouraged to appoint a Representative within the management group. Where the functions (including the distribution function) of the Representative amount to dealing in securities, the The~~ Representative must:-
- (a) be licensed or registered ~~to carry on Type 1 regulated activity~~ under the ~~Ordinance~~ SFO; or
  - (b) ~~appoint another entity that satisfies (a) of this paragraph~~ be a trust company registered under Part VIII of the Trustee Ordinance (Chapter 29 of the laws of Hong Kong) and such company is an affiliate of an authorized financial institution defined under the SFO and is acceptable to the Commission.

~~9.5 If an entity is appointed pursuant to 9.4(b), the Representative should be a branch or subsidiary of the management group.~~

## 9.5 [deleted]

- 9.6 The Representative must be properly appointed to represent the scheme and the management company.

## Written undertaking

- 9.7 The Representative must provide the Commission with a written undertaking that it will perform the duties required of a Representative under this UT Code.

## Retirement and replacement of the representative

- 9.8 Should the Representative retire or be dismissed, it must be replaced as soon as possible, by another Representative whose appointment is subject to the approval of the Commission.

## Hong Kong representative agreement

- 9.9 Details of all contracts between the Representative, the scheme and/or the management company must be supplied to the Commission. Any subsequent amendments of these contracts must be notified to the Commission.

## Jurisdiction

- 9.10 Nothing in the constitutive documents may exclude the jurisdiction of the courts of Hong Kong to entertain an action concerning the scheme.



## **Part III: Post-authorization requirements**

### **Chapter 10: Operational matters**

#### **Valuation and pricing**

- 10.1 A scheme must be valued and priced in accordance with the provisions of its offering and constitutive documents and the provisions of Chapter 6.

#### **Pricing errors**

- 10.2 If an error is made in the pricing of units/shares, the error should be corrected as soon as possible and any necessary action should be taken to avoid further error. If the error results in an incorrect price of 0.5% or more of scheme's net asset value per unit/share, the trustee/custodian and the Commission must be informed immediately. In such a case, investors should be compensated as follows, unless determined otherwise by the trustee/custodian with justification to the Commission:-
- (a) where total loss to individual investors (either purchasing or redeeming) is more than HK\$100 or such lesser amount as the management company may decide, investors should be compensated in such manner as the management company should determine with the approval of the trustee/custodian; and
  - (b) where the loss is to the management company, no compensation should be paid.

#### **Changes to dealing**

- 10.3 Where a scheme deals at a known price, and based on information available, the price exceeds or falls short of the current value of the underlying assets by more than 5%, the management company should defer dealing and calculate a new price as soon as possible.
- 10.4 A permanent change in the method of dealing may only be made after one month's notice to holders.
- 10.5 A temporary change may only be made:-
- (a) in exceptional circumstances, having regard to the interests of holders;
  - (b) if the possibility of a change and the circumstances in which it can be made have been fully disclosed in the offering document; and
  - (c) with the approval of the trustee/custodian.

#### **Suspension and deferral of dealings**

- 10.6 Suspension of dealings may be provided for only in exceptional circumstances, having regard to the interests of holders.



- 10.7 The management company or the Representative must immediately notify the SFC if dealing in units/shares ceases or is suspended. The fact that dealing is suspended must be published immediately following such decision and at least once a month during the period of suspension, in the newspaper(s) in which the scheme's prices are normally published.
- 10.8 Where redemption requests on any one dealing day exceed 10% of the total number of units/shares in issue, redemption requests in excess of 10% may be deferred to the next dealing day.

### **Transactions with connected persons**

- 10.9 No person may be allowed to enter on behalf of the scheme into underwriting or sub-underwriting contracts without the prior consent of the trustee/custodian and unless the scheme or the management company provides in writing that all commissions and fees payable to the management company under such contracts, and all investments acquired pursuant to such contracts, will form part of the scheme's assets.
- 10.10 If cash forming part of the scheme's assets is deposited with the trustee/custodian, the management company, the investment adviser or with any connected person of these companies (being an institution licensed to accept deposits), interest must be received on the deposit at a rate not lower than the prevailing commercial rate for a deposit of that size and term.
- 10.11 All transactions carried out by or on behalf of the scheme must be at arm's length. In particular, any transactions between the scheme and the management company, investment adviser, the directors of the scheme or any of their connected persons as principal may only be made with the prior written consent of the trustee/custodian. All such transactions must be disclosed in the scheme's annual report.
- 10.12 Neither the management company nor any of its connected persons may retain cash or other rebates from a broker or dealer in consideration of directing transactions in scheme property to the broker or dealer save that goods and services (soft dollars) may be retained if:-
- (a) the goods or services are of demonstrable benefit to the holders;
  - (b) transaction execution is consistent with best execution standards and brokerage rates are not in excess of customary institutional full-service brokerage rates;
  - (c) adequate prior disclosure is made in the scheme's offering document the terms of which the holder has consented to [see C451715 of Appendix C]; and
  - (d) periodic disclosure is made in the scheme's annual report in the form of a statement describing the manager's soft dollar practices, including a description of the goods and services received by the manager.

*Note: Goods and services falling within (a) above may include: research and advisory services; economic and political analysis; portfolio analysis, including valuation and performance measurement; market analysis, data and quotation services; computer hardware and software*





*incidental to the above goods and services; clearing and custodian services and investment-related publications. Such goods and services may not include travel, accommodation, entertainment, general administrative goods or services, general office equipment or premises, membership fees, employee salaries, or direct money payments.*

- 10.13 In transacting with Brokers or dealers connected to the management company, investment adviser, directors of the scheme or any of their connected persons, the management company must ensure that it complies with the following obligations:  
~~may not in aggregate account for more than 50% of the scheme's transactions in value in any one financial year of the scheme. The Commission may consider each case on its merits and may permit the 50% to be exceeded if the connected broker or dealer offers advantages to the scheme not available elsewhere.~~
- (a) such transactions should be on arm's length terms;
  - (b) it must use due care in the selection of brokers or dealers and ensure that they are suitably qualified in the circumstances;
  - (c) transaction execution must be consistent with applicable best execution standards;
  - (d) the fee or commission paid to any such broker or dealer in respect of a transaction must not be greater than that which is payable at the prevailing market rate for a transaction of that size and nature;
  - (e) the management company must monitor such transactions to ensure compliance with its obligations; and
  - (f) **all the nature of** such transactions and the total commissions and other quantifiable benefits received by such broker or dealer shall be disclosed in the scheme's annual report.



## Chapter 11: Documentation and reporting

### Scheme Changes Ongoing disclosures

- 11.1 The proposed changes to a scheme in respect of the following must be submitted to the Commission for prior approval:
- (a) changes to constitutive documents;
  - (b) changes of key operators (including the trustee / custodian, management company and its delegates and Hong Kong representative) and their regulatory status and controlling shareholder;
  - (c) changes in investment objectives, policies and restrictions (including the purpose or extent of use of derivatives), fee structure and dealing and pricing arrangements; and
  - (d) any other changes that may materially prejudice holders' rights or interests.
- 11.1A For changes to a scheme that require the Commission's prior approval pursuant to 11.1, the Commission will determine whether holders should be notified and the period of notice (if any) that should be applied before the changes are to take effect. The revised Hong Kong Offering Document as a result of such changes should be submitted to the Commission for prior authorization.
- Notes:*
- (1) *Normally, the Commission will expect that one month's prior written notice (or such longer period as required under applicable laws and regulations or the provisions as set out in the offering or constitutive documents) should be provided to holders in respect of the changes. However, the Commission may permit a shorter period of notice if the change is not significant or may require a longer period of notice (up to three months) in exceptional circumstances. [see also 6.787]*
  - (2) *For the purposes of 11.1A, significant changes would include, for example, changes in investment objectives or major investment policies, and fee structure.*
  - (3) *For any increase in fees and charges from the current level as stated in the Hong Kong Offering Document up to the maximum level permitted by the constitutive documents, prior approval from the Commission is not required, but no less than one month's prior notice must be given to holders.*
- 11.1B For changes to a scheme that do not require the Commission's prior approval pursuant to 11.1, unless there is a specified minimum prior notice period in this UT Code, the management company should inform holders as soon as reasonably practicable of any information concerning the scheme which is necessary to enable holders to appraise the position of the scheme. The Hong Kong Offering Document may be updated to incorporate such changes and reissued without further authorization provided that the content and format of such document remains fundamentally the same as the version



previously authorized. The revised Hong Kong Offering Document must be filed with the Commission, together with a marked-up version against the previously filed version, within ~~two~~one weeks from the date of issuance.

*Note: The management company should inform holders as soon as reasonably practicable of any material adverse change in the financial conditions or business of the key counterparties to a scheme that it is aware of. 'Key counterparties' include the management company, guarantor (where relevant), trustee/custodian and swap counterparty of the fund.*

## Notices to holders

- 11.2 Notification to holders must be made in the language(s) in which the scheme is offered to investors in respect of any changes or proposed changes to the offering or constitutive documents as determined by the Commission pursuant to 11.1A.

*Note: In the case of schemes domiciled outside Hong Kong, notwithstanding the notice provisions of a scheme's home jurisdiction, the Commission may require additional notice to ensure that Hong Kong investors have sufficient time to consider and respond to the documentation. For example, any general meeting at which a special resolution is to be proposed shall be convened on at least 21 days' prior notice and that any general meeting at which an ordinary resolution is to be proposed shall be convened on at least 14 days' prior notice.*

- 11.2A Subject to 11.4 and 11.5 below, notices to holders need not be approved by the Commission prior to issuance, but are required to be filed with the Commission within ~~two~~one weeks from the date of issuance of the notice. The Commission, however, retains its power to require issuers to submit draft notices for review where the Commission considers it appropriate. For the avoidance of doubt, matters relating to 11.1 should be approved by the Commission prior to the distribution of the relevant notices to holders.

- 11.2B The management company has the responsibility to ensure that notices to holders are not misleading and contain accurate and adequate information to keep investors informed. All notices should contain a Hong Kong contact number for investors to make enquiries.

*Note: Notices should not include any reference to a specific date or timetable in respect of the changes made to the offering or constitutive documents where such date or timetable has not been agreed in advance with the Commission.*

- 11.3 (Repealed)

## Withdrawal of authorization

- 11.4 Following the authorization of a scheme, its management company should, subject to 11.5 below, give at least three months' notice to holders of any intention not to maintain such authorization. Such notice should be submitted



to the Commission for prior approval and contain the reasons for the withdrawal of authorization, consequences of the withdrawal, any proposed changes in the operation of the scheme and their effects on existing investors, the alternatives available to investors (including, if possible, a right to switch without charge into another authorized scheme) and, where applicable, an estimate of any relevant expenses and who is expected to bear them.

## **Merger or termination**

- 11.5 If a scheme is to be merged or terminated, in addition to following any procedures set out in the scheme's constitutive documents or governing law, notice must be given to investors as determined by the Commission. Such notice should be submitted to the Commission for prior approval and contain the reasons for the merger or termination, the relevant provisions under the constitutive documents that enable such merger or termination, the consequences of the merger or termination and their effects on existing investors, the alternatives available to investors (including, if possible, a right to switch without charge into another authorized scheme), the estimated costs of the merger or termination and who is expected to bear them.

## **Reporting requirements**

### *Reporting to holders*

- 11.6 At least two reports must be published in respect of each financial year. Annual reports and accounts containing the information provided in Appendix E must be published **in English and Chinese** and distributed to holders within four months of the end of the scheme's financial year and interim reports must be published and distributed to holders within two months of the end of the period they cover.

As an alternative to the distribution of printed financial reports, holders may be notified of where such reports, in printed and electronic forms, can be obtained within the relevant time frame.

Note: Where a scheme does not issue bilingual annual and interim reports, the offering document of the scheme shall clearly disclose that annual and interim reports are available in English or Chinese language only, as the case may be.

- 11.7 The scheme's latest available offer and redemption prices or net asset value must be published at least once a month in at least one leading Hong Kong English language and one Chinese language daily newspaper. However, if a waiver has been given by the Commission under 6.2, publication need only be made in the language approved for that scheme. If dealing is suspended, this must be published in accordance with 10.7.

### Maintenance of a website

- 11.7A A scheme should, as a matter of best practice, maintain a website for publication of its offering document, circulars, notices, announcements,



financial reports and the latest available offer and redemption prices or net asset value of the scheme.

#### *Reporting to Commission*

- 11.898 Subsequent to the authorization of the scheme, all financial reports produced by or for the scheme, its management company and trustee/custodian must be filed with the Commission within the time frame specified in 11.6.
- 11.9109 The management company or the Representative must supply to the Commission, upon request, all information relevant to the scheme's financial reports and accounts.
- 11.1040 The management company or the Representative should notify the Commission as soon as possible of any change to the data in the application form.

#### **Advertising materials**

- 11.11 Advertisements and other invitations to invest in a scheme, including but not limited to those issued by licensed or registered persons acting as the distributors of the scheme, must comply with the Advertising Guidelines. All advertisements must be submitted to the Commission for authorization prior to their issue or publication in Hong Kong, unless exempted under section 103 of the OrdinanceSFO. For the avoidance of doubt, even if an advertisement is exempted from obtaining authorization from the Commission under the OrdinanceSFO, the issuer must still ensure that the advertisement or invitation complies with the Advertising Guidelines.
- 11.12 Where authorization by the Commission is required, it is recommended that the issuer of advertisements nominate one person, such as the Approved Person, the Hong Kong Representative or any other persons acceptable to the Commission, based in Hong Kong to liaise with the Commission. Authorization may be varied or withdrawn by the Commission as it deems fit. Once authorized, the advertisement may be used in any distribution media and reissued without further authorization with updated performance information of schemes and general market commentary provided that the content and format of such advertisement remain fundamentally the same as the version previously authorized and the advertisement, when reissued, is in compliance with the Advertising Guidelines.
- Note: For radio, television, cinema or other time-limiting advertisements / broadcasts that require authorization by the Commission, the script of any verbal statements in such advertisements should be submitted for the Commission's advance clearance, followed by the demo of the broadcast (e.g. digital files) for formal authorization.*
- 11.13 Issuers must keep adequate records of the advertisements issued, either in actual form or by way of a copy of the final proof, and the relevant supporting documents for substantiation of information presented thereon. Such records must be retained for at least 3 years from the latest date of publication / distribution of an advertisement and made available to the Commission upon request.



## Mention of SFC authorization

11.14 Where a scheme is described as having been authorized by the Commission it must be stated that authorization does not imply official recommendation by adding a prominent note in the following terms to the offering document and advertisements and other invitations to invest in **a**the scheme:

*SFC authorization is not a recommendation or endorsement of a scheme nor does it guarantee the commercial merits of a scheme or its performance. It does not mean the scheme is suitable for all investors nor is it an endorsement of its suitability for any particular investor or class of investors.*



## Appendix A1

### **[Recognized jurisdiction schemes]**

**[To be set out in the Commission's website to facilitate future updates]**

(deleted)



## Appendix A2

**[Inspection regimes]**

**[To be set out in the Commission's website to facilitate future updates]**

(deleted)





## Appendix B

**[Application form]**

**[To be set out in the Commission's website to facilitate future updates]**

(deleted)



## Appendix C

### Information to be disclosed in the offering document

This list is not intended to be exhaustive. The directors of the scheme or the management company are obliged to disclose any information which may be necessary for investors to make an informed judgement.

#### Constitution of the scheme

- C1** Name, registered address and place and date of creation of the scheme, with an indication of its duration if limited.

#### Investment objectives and restrictions

- C2** Details of investment objectives and policy, including a summary of investment and borrowing restrictions. If the nature of the investment policy so dictates (such as extensive use of financial derivative instruments for investment purposes, as in the case of UCITS schemes with expanded investment powers and schemes under 8.8 and 8.9), a warning that investment in the scheme is subject to abnormal risks, ~~and~~ a description of the risks involved, and where appropriate, the risk management policy in place.

#### Collateral policy and criteria

- C2A** Selection criteria, nature and policy of the collateral held by the scheme and description of the holdings of collateral, including:

(a) the nature of the collateral;

(b) identity of counterparty providing the collateral;

(c) the source and basis of valuation of collateral;

(d) circumstances under which the collateral may be enforced and whether it will be subject to any net-off or set-off;

(e) description of haircut policy (if any);

(f) description of diversification requirements (if any); and

(g) value of the scheme (by percentage) secured/ covered by collateral with breakdown by asset class/ nature and credit ratings.

#### Operators and principals

- C3** The names and registered addresses of the following parties (where applicable):-
- (a) the directors of the scheme/management company and its board of directors;
  - (b) the trustee/custodian;
  - (c) the investment adviser;



- (d) the Hong Kong Representative;
- (e) the Hong Kong distribution company, if different from (d) above;
- (f) the auditors;
- (g) the registrar.

### **Characteristics of units/shares**

- C4** Minimum investment and subsequent holding (if any).
- C5** A description of the different types of units/shares, including their currency of denomination.
- C6** Form of certification.
- C7** Frequency of valuation and dealing, including dealing days.

### **Application and redemption procedures**

- C8** Names of the Hong Kong daily newspapers in which prices will be published [see 11.7].
- C9** Procedure for subscribing/redeeming units/shares, and in the case of umbrella funds, conversion of units/shares.
- C10** The maximum interval between the request for redemption and the despatch of the redemption proceeds [see 6.14-145 and D9 (b)].
- C11** A summary of the circumstances in which dealing in units/shares may be deferred or suspended.
- C12** Statement that no money should be paid to any intermediary in Hong Kong who is not licensed or registered to carry on Type 1 regulated activity under Part V of the ~~Securities and Futures Ordinance~~SFO.

### **Distribution policy**

- C13** The distribution policy and the approximate dates on which dividends (if any) will be paid (if applicable).

### **Fees and charges**

- C14**
  - (a) the level of all fees and charges payable by an investor [see 6.16-167 to 6.18189], including all charges levied on subscription, redemption and conversion (in the case of umbrella funds);
  - (b) the level of all fees and charges payable by the scheme, including management fees, custodian fees and start-up expenses; and
  - (c) the notice period for fee increases [see 11.1A].

*Note: In the case of indeterminable fees and charges, the basis of calculation or the estimated ranges should be disclosed.*



- C15** Where a connected person of the management company or the investment adviser receives goods or services from a broker or dealer [see 10.12], a summary of the terms under which such goods or services are received. In addition, a nil statement regarding retention of cash rebates by any of these persons.

## Taxation

- C16** Details of Hong Kong and principal taxes levied on the scheme's income and capital, including tax, if any, deducted on distribution to holders.

## Reports and accounts

- C17** The date of the scheme's financial year.
- C18** Particulars of what reports will be sent to registered holders and when [see 11.6]. If there are bearer units in issue, information must be given on where in Hong Kong reports can be obtained.

**C18A** A statement whether the annual and interim reports would be published in both English and/or Chinese.

## Warnings

- C19** Statements/warnings must be prominently displayed in the offering document as follows:-
- (a) "Important - if you are in any doubt about the contents of this offering document, you should seek independent professional financial advice".
  - (b) other warnings as required by ~~the~~ this UT Code .

## Product KFS

**C19A** key facts statement ("Product KFS")

Offering document should contain a Product KFS which is deemed to form a part of the offering document [see notes to 6.2A].

## General information

- C20** A list of constitutive documents and an address in Hong Kong where they can be inspected free of charge or purchased at a reasonable price.
- C21** The date of publication of the offering document.
- C22** A statement that the ~~directors of the scheme or the~~ management company and its directors (together with the directors of the scheme in the case of a mutual funds) ~~accept responsibility for the information contained in the offering document as being accurate at the date of publication~~ accept full responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the offering document and confirm, having made all reasonable enquiries, that to the best of their knowledge and belief there are no other facts the omission of which would make any statement misleading.



**C22A** If available, website address of the scheme which contains publication of its offering document, circulars, notices, announcements, financial reports and the latest available offer and redemption prices or net asset value.

**C25C23** Details of unauthorized schemes must not be shown in the offering document. Where names of such schemes are mentioned, these must be clearly marked as unauthorized and not available to Hong Kong residents.

### **Termination of scheme**

**C26C24** A summary of the circumstances in which the scheme can be terminated.



## Appendix D

### Contents of the constitutive documents

- D1** Name of scheme
- D2** Participating parties
- A statement to specify the participating parties including the management company, the representative, trustee/custodian, and investment adviser (if any).
- D3** Governing law
- D4** For unit trusts only:-
- (a) A statement that the deed is binding on each holder as if he had been a party to it and so to be bound by its provisions and authorizes and requires the trustee and the management company to do as required of them by the terms of the deed.
  - (b) A provision that a holder is not liable to make any further payment after he had paid the purchase price of his units and that no further liability can be imposed on him in respect of the units which he holds.
  - (c) A declaration that the property of the scheme is held by the trustee on trust for the holders of the units *pari passu* according to the number of units held by each holder. (This may be modified as appropriate for schemes offering income and accumulation units).
  - (d) A statement that the trustee will report to holders in accordance with 4.5(f).
  - (e) A statement that the trustee should retire in the manner as stipulated in 4.6.
- D5** For mutual fund corporations only:-
- (a) A declaration that the property of the scheme is held by the custodian on trust for the scheme.
  - (b) A statement to list the obligations of the custodian as set out in 4.5.
  - (c) A statement that the custodian should retire in the manner as set out in 4.6.
- D6** Management company
- (a) A statement to list the obligations of the management company as set out in 5.10.
  - (b) A statement that the management company should retire as set out in 5.11.



**D7** Investment and borrowing restrictions

A statement to list the restrictions on the investment of the deposited property and the maximum borrowing limit of the scheme. [see Chapter 7 and Chapter 8 (for specialized funds)]

**D8** Valuation of property and pricing

The following rules on valuation of property and pricing must be stipulated –

- (a) the method of determining the value of the assets and liabilities of the property of the scheme and the net asset value accordingly;
- (b) the method of calculating the issue and redemption prices; and
- (c) the method of pricing and the circumstances under which it can change.

**D9** Suspension and deferral of dealing

The following must be stated:-

- (a) the circumstances under which the dealing of units/shares can be deferred or suspended; and
- (b) the maximum interval between the receipt of a properly documented request for redemption of units/shares and the payment of the redemption money to the holder, which may not exceed one calendar month.

**D10** Fees & charges

The following must be stated:-

- (a) the maximum percentage of the initial charge payable to the management company out of the issue price of a unit/share;
- (b) the maximum fee payable to the management company out of the property of the scheme, expressed as an annual percentage;
- (c) fee payable to trustee/custodian;
- (d) preliminary expenses to be amortized against the property of the scheme; and
- (e) all other material fees and charges payable out of the property of the scheme.

**D11** Meetings

Provisions on the manner in which meetings are conducted in accordance with **6.151615**.



**D12** Transactions with connected persons

The following must be stated:-

- (a) cash forming part of the property of the scheme may be placed as deposits with the trustee/custodian, management company, the investment adviser or with any connected persons of these companies (being an institution licensed to accept deposits) so long as that institution pays interest thereon at no lower rate than is, in accordance with normal banking practice, the commercial rate for deposits of the size of the deposit in question negotiated at arm's length;
- (b) money can be borrowed from the trustee/custodian, management company, the investment adviser or any of their connected persons (being a bank) so long as that bank charges interest at no higher rate, and any fee for arranging or terminating the loan is of no greater amount than is in accordance with normal banking practice, the commercial rate for a loan of the size and nature of the loan in question negotiated at arm's length;
- (c) any transactions between the scheme and the management company, the investment adviser, directors of the scheme or any of their connected persons as principal may only be made with the prior written consent of the trustee/custodian; and
- (d) all transactions carried out by or on behalf of the scheme must be at arm's length and executed on the best available terms. ~~Transactions with persons connected to the management company, investment adviser or directors of the scheme may not account for more than 50% of the scheme's transactions in value in any one financial year of the scheme.~~

**D13** Distribution policy and date

Distribution policy and approximate date when income will be distributed (if applicable).

**D14** Annual accounting period

Calendar year date on which the annual accounting period ends. In the case of an umbrella fund, the accounting period should be the same for all constituent funds.

**D15** Base currency

A statement of the base currency of the scheme.

**D16** Modification of the constitutive documents

A statement of the means by which modifications to the constitutive documents can be effected [see 6.778].





**D17** Termination of scheme

A statement of the circumstances in which the scheme can be terminated.



## Appendix E

### Contents of financial reports

Annual reports must contain all the information required in this appendix and a report issued by the trustee/custodian to holders as required by 4.5(f).

Interim reports must at least contain the Statement of Assets and Liabilities and the Investment Portfolio. Where the scheme has paid or proposes to pay an interim dividend, the amount of dividend should be disclosed.

All reports must contain comparative figures for the previous period except for the Investment Portfolio.

The mention of any unauthorized schemes in the reports must be indicated as "Not authorized in Hong Kong and not available to Hong Kong Residents".

The items listed under the Statement of Assets and Liabilities, Revenue Statement, Distribution Statement, Statement of Movements in Capital Account and the Notes to the Accounts, where applicable, must be disclosed. It is however, not mandatory to adopt the format as shown or to disclose the items in the same order.

While the SFC recognizes that reports of recognized jurisdiction schemes will vary in content, reports are expected to offer investors comparable disclosure as set out in this appendix. Although reports of recognized jurisdiction schemes will generally be reviewed on the basis that they already comply in substance with this appendix, disclosure must be made of transactions with connected persons and soft commission arrangements [see Notes to the Accounts (2) and (3)]. The SFC reserves the right to require additional disclosure ~~[see Appendix A1]~~.

### Statement of assets and liabilities

The following must be separately disclosed:-

1. Total value of investments
2. Bank balances
3. Formation costs
4. Dividends and other receivables
5. Amounts receivable on subscription
6. Bank loans and overdrafts or other forms of borrowings
7. Amounts payable on redemption
8. Distributions payable
9. Total value of all assets
10. Total value of all liabilities



11. Net asset value
12. Number of units/shares in issue
13. Net asset value per unit/share

### **Revenue statement**

1. Total investment income net of withholding tax, broken down by category
2. Total other income, broken down by category
3. Equalization on issue and cancellation of units/shares
4. An itemized list of various costs which have been debited to the scheme including:-
  - (a) fees paid to the management company
  - (b) remuneration of the trustee/custodian
  - (c) fees paid to investment adviser (if any)
  - (d) other amounts paid to any connected persons of the scheme
  - (e) amortization of formation costs
  - (f) directors' fee and remuneration
  - (g) safe custody and bank charges
  - (h) auditors' remuneration
  - (i) interest on borrowings
  - (j) legal and other professional fees
  - (k) any other expenses borne by the scheme
5. Taxes
6. Amounts transferred to and from the capital account
7. Net income to be carried forward for distribution

### **Distribution statement**

1. Amount brought forward at the beginning of the period
2. Net income for the period
3. Interim distribution per unit/share and date of distribution
4. Final distribution per unit/share and date of distribution
5. Undistributed income carried forward

### **-Statement of movements in capital account**

1. Value of the scheme as at the beginning of the period
2. Number of units/shares issued and the amounts received upon such issuance (after equalization if applicable)



3. Number of units/shares redeemed and the amount paid on redemption (after equalization if applicable)
4. Any items resulting in an increase/decrease in value of the scheme including:-
  - (a) surplus/loss on sale of investments
  - (b) exchange gain/loss
  - (c) unrealized appreciation/diminution in value of investments
  - (d) net income for the period less distribution
5. Amounts transferred to and from the revenue account
6. Value of the scheme as at the end of the period

### **Notes to the accounts**

The following matters should be set out in the notes to the accounts:-

1. Principal accounting policies
  - (a) the basis of valuation of the assets of the scheme including the basis of valuation of unquoted and unlisted securities
  - (b) the revenue recognition policy regarding dividend income and other income
  - (c) foreign currency translation
  - (d) the basis of valuation of forward foreign exchange and futures contracts
  - (e) the basis of amortization of formation costs
  - (f) taxation
  - (g) any other accounting policy adopted to deal with items which are judged material or critical in determining the transactions and in stating the disposition of the scheme

Any changes to the above accounting policies and their financial effects upon the accounts should also be disclosed.

2. Transactions with connected persons

The following should be disclosed:-

- (a) a description of the nature of any transactions entered into during the period between the scheme and the management company, investment adviser, the directors of the scheme or any entity in which those parties or their connected persons have a material interest, together with a statement confirming that these transactions have been entered into in the ordinary course of business and on normal commercial terms;
- (b)



- (i) the total aggregate value of the transactions of the scheme effected through a broker who is a connected person of the management company, the investment adviser, or the directors of the scheme;
    - (ii) the percentage of such transactions in value to the total transactions in value of the scheme during the year;
    - (iii) the total brokerage commission paid to such broker in relation to transactions effected through it; and
    - (iv) the average rate of commission effected through such broker.
  - (c) details of all transactions which are outside the ordinary course of business or not on normal commercial terms entered into during the period between the scheme and the management company, investment adviser, the directors of the scheme or any entity in which these parties or their connected persons have a material interest;
  - (d) name of the management company, the director of the scheme or any connected persons of such company or director if any of them becomes entitled to profits from transactions in units/shares or from management of the scheme, and the amount of profits to which each of them becomes entitled;
  - (e) where the scheme does not have any transactions with connected persons during the period, a nil statement to that effect; and
  - (f) the basis of the fee charged for the management of the fund and the name of the management company. In addition, where a performance fee is charged to the scheme, the basis of calculation and amount of performance fee charged should be separately disclosed. For Futures and Options Funds [see 8.4AA], the total transactions costs must also be disclosed.
3. Details of any soft commission arrangements relating to dealings in the property of the scheme or a nil statement if no such arrangements exist during the period.
  4. Borrowings  
  
State whether the borrowings are secured or unsecured and the duration of the borrowings.
  5. Contingent liabilities and commitments  
  
Details of any contingent liabilities and commitments of the scheme.
  6. If the free negotiability of any asset is restricted by statutory or contractual requirements, this must be stated.

### **Contents of the auditors' report**

The report of the Auditor should state:-



1. Whether in the auditor's opinion, the accounts prepared for that period have been properly prepared in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Trust Deed (if a unit trust) or Articles of Association (if a mutual fund) and ~~the~~ this UT Code;
2. Without prejudice to the foregoing, whether in the auditor's opinion, a true and fair view is given of the disposition of the scheme at the end of the period and of the transactions of the scheme for the period then ended;
3. If the auditor is of the opinion that proper books and records have not been kept by the scheme and/or the accounts prepared are not in agreement with the scheme's books and records, that fact; and
4. If the auditor has failed to obtain all the information and explanations which, to the best of his knowledge and belief, are necessary for the purposes of the audit, that fact.

### **Investment portfolio**

1. Number or quantity of each holding together with the description and market value. Distinguish between listed and unlisted and categorize by country. For investments in schemes by a UPMF, the place of incorporation of the schemes should be disclosed.
2. The total investment stated at cost.
3. The value of each holding as a percentage of net asset value.
4. Statement of movements in portfolio holdings since the end of the preceding accounting period.

*Notes: (1) The management company is expected to choose the most appropriate illustration of portfolio holdings taking into account the objective and nature of the fund. Any one of the following methods may be considered acceptable to the Commission:*

- (a) detailed holdings in individual securities;*
- (b) holdings in different sectors of a particular market;*
- (c) holdings in different countries (in the case of, for example, a global equity fund); or*
- (d) holdings in various kinds of securities such as equities, bonds, warrants and options etc. (in the case of a diversified fund).*

*(2) Except for (a) above, movements in portfolio holdings can be expressed in percentages.*

### **Holdings of collateral**

1. For schemes holding collateral of more than 30% of the net asset value of the schemes, description of holdings of collateral, including:
  - (a) nature of the collateral;
  - (b) identity of counterparty providing the collateral;



(c) value of the scheme (by percentage) secured/covered by collateral, with breakdown by asset class/nature and credit rating; and

(d) credit rating of the collateral (if applicable).

### **Performance table**

1. A comparative table covering the last 3 financial years and including, for each financial year, at the end of the financial year:-
  - (a) the total net asset value; and
  - (b) the net asset value per unit/share.
2. A performance record over the last 10 financial years; or if the scheme has not been in existence during the whole of that period, over the whole period in which it has been in existence, showing the highest issue price and the lowest redemption price of the units/shares during each of those years.



## Appendix F

(Deleted)





## Appendix G

### Guidelines for review of internal controls and systems of trustees / custodians

#### Introduction

1. Pursuant to 4.1 of this [UT](#) Code, trustees/custodians of collective investment schemes are required to be approved by the SFC. An acceptable trustee/custodian should either:
  - (a) on an ongoing basis, be subject to regulatory supervision; or
  - (b) appoint an independent auditor to periodically review its internal controls and systems on terms of reference agreed with the SFC and should file such report with the SFC.
2. As a general guide, in determining the acceptability of an overseas supervisory authority, the SFC will have to be satisfied that either the overseas regulatory authority or its delegate carries out regular inspection of trustees/custodians within its jurisdiction or the latter is subject to regular review in a manner generally consistent with the SFC requirement. In the latter case, the auditor's report should be filed with the SFC.

#### Purpose of Guidelines

3. These Guidelines provide further guidance to trustees and custodians of scheme regarding compliance with the periodic internal control review requirement of [theis UT](#) Code. These Guidelines set out the minimum best practice for trustees/custodians and auditors of scheme in order to facilitate the agreement of the scope of an internal control review on terms which will be acceptable to the SFC. These Guidelines have been developed in consultation with the Hong Kong Trustees Association and the Hong Kong Society of Accountants.
4. For the purpose of these Guidelines, the term “auditors” refers to the independent reporting accountants who are engaged in reporting on the internal controls of the trustee/custodian of scheme.



## Scope of review

5. The internal control review should involve all material procedural and control elements relevant and necessary to the responsibilities of trustees/custodians in relation to scheme. The review should be conducted in accordance with generally acceptable international auditing practices<sup>1</sup>.
6. The engagement letter between the trustee/custodian and the auditor should incorporate or refer to the following Terms of Reference which sets out, as a minimum, the scope of review for compliance with the requirements of ~~the~~ this UT Code. The trustee/custodian may engage the auditor to expand the scope of the review, and it is important that this is agreed with the auditor before the commencement of the review.
7. Where the trustee/custodian or an associated company carries on part of its responsibilities outside Hong Kong in a jurisdiction in which the SFC considers that there is inadequate regulatory supervision or review (as described in paragraph 2), then the scope of the review should include those functions undertaken outside Hong Kong in a way which satisfies the auditor issuing the report. Notwithstanding that an offshore company may be appointed trustee/custodian, if the trustee/custodian confirms that all relevant functions are carried out by it or its delegates in Hong Kong, the scope of the review can be so limited.

## Terms of reference

8. The precise terms of the review engagement will be as agreed between the trustee/custodian and the auditor in each particular case. Terms of Reference for the review should be incorporated in the review engagement letter and should, as a minimum, include the following:

### A. Report by the management of the trustee/ custodian

The management of the trustee/custodian must issue a report to describe the control objectives. As a minimum, control objectives should include the following:

- Maintenance of a control environment
- Compliance with applicable legal and regulatory requirements
- Compliance with control policies and procedures
- Safekeeping of assets against loss

The controls designed to meet the above objectives may vary from firm to firm. The SFC does not mandate specific controls to meet the control objectives. It is the responsibility of the management of the trustee/custodian to design suitable controls and ensure that these are effective and properly implemented for the purpose of achieving the control objectives so identified.

---

<sup>1</sup> For example: *Practice Note 860.2* issued by the Hong Kong Society of Accountants; or *Technical Release AUDIT 4/97* issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales (ICAEW) in the UK.



In addition, the report should describe the internal control policies and procedures designed for achieving the control objectives.

#### **B. Objective of the review engagement**

The objective of the engagement is to review the control objectives and procedures as described in the report issued by the trustee/custodian and to report on the findings of the review to the management of the trustee/custodian.

#### **C. Report by the auditor**

The auditor should issue a report, addressed to the management of the trustee/custodian, detailing the scope of the review work carried out relating to the report by management and the conclusions reached. The report should state, as a minimum:

- (i) a summary of the terms of engagement (or attach a copy of the letter of engagement);
- (ii) the respective responsibilities of the management of the trustee/custodian and the auditor;
- (iii) the basis of the auditor's opinion (detailing the scope of work); and
- (iv) the auditor's opinion.

#### **D. Auditor's opinion**

As a minimum requirement, the auditor's opinion should state:

- (i) whether the accompanying report by the management of the trustee/custodian describes fairly the control procedures in place during the period under review; and
- (ii) whether the specific control procedures tested (with details described) operated as described during the period under review.

Where applicable, the auditor should state the limitations to the tests performed and whether such limitations have any material impact on the auditor's opinion.

#### **Period under Review**

9. The period under review should be for a period of at least twelve months and should coincide with the financial year of the trustee/custodian unless otherwise agreed with the SFC.

#### **Filing of Reports with the SFC**

10. The management of the trustee/custodian should file a copy of the auditor's report and the trustee/custodian report (as described in paragraph 8) with the SFC within four months from the end of the period under review. Where



applicable, management response to the auditor's report should also be attached. The reports should be sent to:

Investment Products Department  
Securities & Futures Commission  
8/F Floor, Chater House  
8 Connaught Road Central  
Hong Kong

### **Frequency of Review**

11. The review of internal controls and systems of trustees/custodians of scheme should be conducted on an annual basis. The SFC reserves the right to demand more frequent review of a trustee or custodian should this be deemed necessary.



## Appendix H

### Guidelines on hedge funds reporting requirements

#### Introduction

*The Commission has published the Guidelines on Hedge Funds Reporting Requirements (the Guidelines). The Guidelines sets out the minimum amount of information that is required to be disclosed in regular reporting to holders. The Commission advocates additional information to be disclosed if it is deemed to be appropriate and informative to holders, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme.*

1. Pursuant to 5.17 and 11.6 of this [UT](#) Code, authorized schemes are required to publish at least two reports in respect of each financial year, of which the annual report must be audited by the auditor for the scheme. Pursuant to 8.7(~~vw~~) of this [UT](#) Code, authorized hedge funds are also required to publish quarterly reports for holders. The following scheme reports should be distributed to holders and filed with the Commission within the stipulated timeframe:

<u>Nature of reports</u>	<u>No. of reports for each scheme financial year</u>	<u>Timeframe for filing and distribution to holders</u>
Annual report	One	Within four months of the end of the relevant financial year, except for funds of hedge funds (FoHFs) where the timeframe for filing and distribution to holders is within six months of the end of the relevant financial year.
Semi-annual report	One	Within two months of the end of the relevant period
Quarterly reports	Four	Within one month of the end of the relevant period, except for FoHFs where the timeframe for filing and distribution to holders is within six weeks of the end of the relevant period.

*Note: Where the management company wishes to report to holders via monthly reports, there is no need to prepare quarterly reports provided that the same requirements for quarterly reports are complied with in the monthly reports.*

2. These Guidelines aims to provide further guidance to management companies regarding the on-going reporting requirements of authorized hedge funds. *The Commission reserves the right to require additional disclosure to be made.*
3. For the ease of understanding by holders, where technical terms are used in the scheme reports, the management company is specifically encouraged to include a glossary to explain their meaning and their implications to investors. Where financial terms are used in the scheme reports, the management company must



provide their calculation bases, definitions, and any underlying assumptions.

4. Where the provisions refer to the scheme, this means the authorized hedge fund.

## **A. Contents of financial reports**

### *Requirements applicable to both annual and semi-annual reports*

5. Annual and semi-annual reports of the scheme must contain the information as required by Appendix E of ~~the~~ this UT Code, with the exceptions as provided in paragraph 6.
6. The Commission encourages full disclosure of individual holdings of the scheme. Where the management company is satisfied that full disclosure of such information may be unduly burdensome, it may adopt alternative disclosures in lieu of the disclosure as required in the Investment Portfolio subsection of Appendix E of ~~the~~ this UT Code. In that case, the management company must choose the most appropriate and informative illustration of the scheme's holdings/exposures at the end of the relevant period, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme.

*Note: The following will be regarded as minimum disclosures acceptable to the Commission. The Commission reserves the right to require disclosure of the full position of the scheme for the purposes of carrying out its regulatory functions. Such disclosures to the Commission will be subject to the Commission's preservation of secrecy provisions.*

*With respect to any scheme that is a FoHFs, the management company should disclose:*

- a. *Exposures (including cash and cash equivalent holdings\*) for the scheme at the scheme level as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of net asset value of the scheme) categorized by geographical region, industry, strategy, or some other basis that the management company considers the most appropriate, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme;*
- b. *The names and percentage values (based on net asset value of the scheme) of the top five underlying funds held by the scheme as of the reporting date;*
- c. *The number of underlying funds and the number of underlying fund managers included in the scheme as of the reporting date; and*
- d. *(Where the scheme is a multi-strategy FoHFs) disclosure of the number of underlying funds and underlying fund managers under each hedge fund strategy.*

*With respect to other schemes, the management company should disclose:*

- a. *Exposures (including cash and cash equivalent holdings\*) for the scheme as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of net asset value of*



*the scheme) categorized by asset class, geographical region, industry, strategy, or some other basis that the management company considers the most appropriate, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme;*

- b. The names and amounts of the top five long positions and top five short positions held by the scheme on a gross basis as of the reporting date; and*
  - c. The aggregated gross long and short positions held by the scheme as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of the net asset value of the scheme);*
- \* “Cash equivalent holdings” are defined as those assets with a maturity of less than one year and which are readily transactable in an arm’s length transaction between willing and knowledgeable parties.*

#### *Requirements specific to annual reports*

7. Where performance fees were borne by the scheme during the financial year, the annual reports of the scheme must contain the amount of such performance fees payable at the scheme level expressed as a percentage of average net asset value of the scheme as at the end of the financial year and the calculation basis.

*Note (1): A nil statement is required if no performance fees were borne by the scheme during the financial year.*

*(2): Where the scheme is a FoHFs, only performance fees at the FoHFs’ level need to be disclosed.*

## **B. Quarterly reports**

#### *Distribution of quarterly reports*

8. The Commission requires that quarterly reports be distributed to holders to keep them informed of the scheme activities on a timely basis.
9. Quarterly reports are required to be filed with the SFC and distributed to holders within the stipulated timeframe under paragraph 1 of these Guidelines.

*Note: Given the newness of these Guidelines to the market, measures would be taken to familiarise the management company with the reporting requirements and the disclosure standard expected of these reports. The first quarterly report of each scheme must obtain a “no objection” letter from the Commission before it is issued to persons in Hong Kong. In order to facilitate the vetting procedures, upon request from the management company, Commission staff may review and provide comments on the format of the first quarterly report of each scheme before its contents are ready.*

10. Quarterly reports may not be distributed to non-holders unless accompanied by the offering document of the scheme.



### *Contents of quarterly reports*

11. Quarterly reports must be provided in the English and Chinese languages, and must contain the following information regarding the scheme.

### *Management commentary*

12. A statement to the effect that the directors of the scheme and/or the management company accept responsibility for the information contained in the quarterly reports as being accurate as at the date of publication.

- (a) Performance review

A commentary by the management company that describes and explains the key factors impacting upon the scheme's financial performance and any style drifts in the scheme during the reporting period.

*Note: Where the scheme is a FoHFs, the management company is expected to explain what has driven performance in terms of different strategies.*

- (b) Market outlook

A discussion of the management company's expectation of the primary risk factors to which the scheme is exposed to, and the outlook of the development of these factors as they relate to the scheme.

- (c) Changes in key investment personnel

A discussion on the changes in composition of the key investment personnel (if any) at the scheme level and their impact on the scheme's overall strategy, risk profile or future performance.

- (d) Lawsuits

Details of any lawsuits that may have a financial impact on the scheme during the reporting period.

### *Portfolio review*

- (e) Fund size and NAV per unit/share

The scheme's total net asset value, net asset value per unit/share as at the end of the reporting period, and the percentage change in net asset value per unit/share since the last reporting period.

- (f) Cash borrowings and other sources of leverage

The amount of cash borrowings and other sources of leverage at the scheme level and a summary of how leverage is calculated as at the end of the reporting period.

*Note: The management company is expected to choose the most appropriate and informative illustration of the scheme's leverage, consistent with disclosures in the scheme's offering document, taking*





*into account the objective and strategy of the scheme. Where the scheme is a FoHFs, disclosure is only required at the FoHFs' level.*

(g) Performance and risk measures

Disclosure of performance and risk measures of the scheme in tabular form. A sample format with the required parameters and time frames is set out in the **Appendix** to these Guidelines.

The management company is encouraged to disclose other appropriate performance and risk measures, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme (e.g. Value at Risk (VaR), Alpha, Sortino ratio, additional Sharpe ratios using alternative risk free rates other than zero, aggregated risk/return statistics, full position disclosure of derivatives and their basis of calculation, time to recovery periods, % of down months, % of up months, delta equivalent of option positions etc.).

The management company must provide the calculation basis, definition and any underlying assumptions of each performance and risk measure either alongside the performance and risk measure or in a separate glossary.

(h) Amount of seed money

Disclosure of the amount of seed money expressed in percentage terms of the net asset value of the scheme contributed by the management company or its connected persons as at the end of the reporting period.

(i) Illiquid holdings

With respect to any scheme that is a FoHFs, the management company must disclose:

- (i) The name(s) of any underlying fund(s) suspended during the reporting period;
- (ii) The acquisition cost of such underlying funds; and
- (iii) The latest status of such underlying funds as at the end of the reporting period.

With respect to other schemes, the management company must disclose the name(s) and acquisition costs of all illiquid holdings\* held by the scheme as at the end of the reporting period, categorized by:

- (i) Derivatives; and
- (ii) Non-derivatives.

\* *“Illiquid holdings” are defined as assets for which there are no readily available market values to be transacted between knowledgeable and willing parties in an arm’s length transaction, or with no registered turnover in the last 30 days prior to and including the reporting date.*

(j) Concentrated exposures

With respect to any scheme that is a FoHFs, the management company should disclose:



- (i) Exposures (including cash and cash equivalent holdings) for the scheme at the scheme level as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of net asset value of the scheme) categorized by geographical region, industry, strategy, or some other basis that the management company considers the most appropriate, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme;
- (ii) The number of underlying funds and the number of underlying fund managers included in the scheme as of the reporting date; and
- (iii) (Where the scheme is a multi-strategy FoHFs) disclosure of the number of underlying funds and underlying fund managers under each hedge fund strategy.

With respect to other schemes, the management company should disclose:

- (i) Exposures (including cash and cash equivalent holdings) for the scheme as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of net asset value of the scheme) categorized by asset class, geographical region, industry, strategy, or some other basis that the management company considers the most appropriate, taking into account the objective and strategy of the scheme; and
- (ii) The aggregated gross long and short positions held by the scheme as of the reporting date (expressed in percentage terms of the net asset value of the scheme).

*Note (1): "Cash equivalent holdings" are defined as those assets with a maturity of less than one year and which are readily transactable in an arm's length transaction between willing and knowledgeable parties.*

*(2): The Commission reserves the right to require disclosure of the full position of the scheme for the purposes of carrying out its regulatory functions. Such disclosures to the Commission will be subject to the Commission's preservation of secrecy provisions.*



**Information to be Disclosed under Section B.12(g) of the Guidelines on Hedge Funds Reporting Requirements**

Actual Monthly Returns in the Last Three Calendar Years (net of all fees and charges)

	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	YTD Actual
Year (T-2)													
Year (T-1)													
Year T													

Summary Data

	Year T <sup>3</sup> (annualised year to date)	Year (T –1)	Year (T – 2)	Since Launch <sup>4</sup> [specify launch date]
<b>Performance Statistics</b>				
Annual Return				
Annualized Standard Deviation <sup>5</sup>				
Sharpe Ratio <sup>6</sup>				
<b>Fund Statistics</b>				
Highest NAV per unit/share				
Lowest NAV per unit/share				
Maximum drawdown <sup>7</sup>				

**[Display prominent warning statements to the effect that: “Investment involves risk, please see the offering document for further details. Past performance figures shown are not indicative of future performance.”]**

**Notes:**

- (1) Calculations must be net of all fees and charges borne by the scheme, with the calculation basis clearly stated.
- (2) As per paragraph 3 of the Guidelines, the management company should include a glossary of technical terms to explain their meaning and implications to investors (e.g. the higher the number, the riskier the scheme etc.).
- (3) “Year T” denotes the current scheme financial year.
- (4) Statistics since launch can only be shown if the scheme has been in existence for one year or longer.



- (5) “Annualized standard deviation” is defined as the square root of the squared deviations of the actual returns from the simple average return based on the dealing days of the scheme, divided by the number of observations, shown on an annualised basis.
- (6) “Sharpe ratio” is defined as annual return divided by the annualised standard deviation.  
*Note: For the sake of simplicity, a zero risk free rate is adopted in the calculation for “Sharpe Ratio”*
- (7) “Maximum drawdown” is the maximum amount of loss from an equity high until a new equity high, expressed as a percentage of the previous equity high.



## Appendix I

### Guidelines for regulating index tracking exchange traded funds

#### Introduction

1. These guidelines apply to passively managed index tracking exchange traded funds (which will be referred to as “Exchange Traded Funds” or “ETFs” throughout these guidelines)<sup>1</sup> authorized pursuant to the ~~this UT Code~~ Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds (the “UT Code”). These guidelines form part of ~~Chapter 8.6 of this UT Code~~ and are to be read in conjunction with ~~the this UT Code~~ for an overall view of the regulatory framework for ETFs. In case of doubt, an applicant should consult the SFC at the earliest possible time on the application of these guidelines to an Exchange Traded Fund seeking authorization under ~~the this UT Code~~.
2. These guidelines are devised on the basis that ETFs, whether established in Hong Kong or overseas, should comply with common principles for safeguarding investors’ interests if they seek to be authorized by the SFC. Local and overseas ETFs may seek to rely on the general relief granted in these guidelines from strict compliance with certain UT Code requirements including investment restrictions and prescribed risk warnings.
3. Overseas ETFs that meet the core requirements for authorized schemes under ~~the this UT Code~~ and are governed by a regulatory framework considered acceptable in these guidelines may seek the SFC authorization by way of a streamlined process. Depending on the specific product type and the way they are governed in their home jurisdictions, overseas ETFs may be deemed to have complied with some or all of the requirements in ~~Chapter 8.6 of the this UT Code~~ in relation to investment restrictions and strategies, index acceptability and the documentation requirements such as constitutive documents, product disclosure documents and financial reports in other parts of ~~the this UT Code~~.
4. These guidelines also require ETFs that are primarily listed on the local exchange of Hong Kong to adopt an enhanced disclosure regime for real time or near-real time trading information. Overseas ETFs that are primarily listed on overseas exchanges are recommended but are not obliged to comply with this enhanced disclosure regime for real time or near-real time overseas trading information.

---

<sup>1</sup> An “index tracking ETF” means an index fund (as defined in Chapter 8.6) and whose units/shares are traded on a securities exchange. For avoidance of doubt, the term “ETF” used in these guidelines does not cover actively managed non-index tracking funds.



## Basic requirements for ETFs

5. ETFs, whether local or overseas, must comply with the structural, operational and core investment requirements under ~~this~~ the UT Code. They must also abide by the on-going compliance and reporting requirements under ~~this~~ the UT Code subject to the applicable relief laid down in these guidelines if they seek authorization from the SFC.<sup>2</sup>
6. ETFs that do not conduct initial public offerings or any forms of public sales or subscriptions are not obliged to produce a Hong Kong Offering Document as stated in ~~Chapter~~ 6.1 of ~~the~~ this UT Code. Instead, they must prepare a Product Description Document in both English and Chinese. The term “offering document” shall be replaced by the term “Product Description Document” wherever the former appears in ~~the~~ this UT Code (see Paragraph ~~10-1110~~ below) in relation to this type of ETFs.
7. ~~Given ETF are index funds, the requirements~~The general principles set out in ~~Chapter~~ 8.6 (a) to ~~(efe)~~ of the UT Code are broadly applicable to ETFs, ~~whether local or overseas,~~ unless otherwise stated in this appendix~~these guidelines~~.

*Note: ETFs holding physical commodities of precious metals may be considered on a case-by-case basis.*

- 7A. Where an ETF adopts the strategy of investing in financial derivative instruments or synthetic replication for the purpose of achieving its investment objective, the requirements set out in 8.8 of this UT Code must also be complied with.
8. It is a condition for authorizing an ETF that intends to be primarily traded in Hong Kong and authorized under ~~the~~ this UT Code (referred to as “Local ETFs” in these guidelines), that it must be either listed or traded on the Stock Exchange of Hong Kong Limited (the “SEHK”).

## Streamlined regulatory regime for ETFs

9. ETFs must comply with ~~the~~ this UT Code requirements not otherwise modified or waived by these guidelines.
10. Except as provided in paragraph ~~2454~~ (e) below, an ETF that is not conducting initial public offerings, or any forms of public sales or subscriptions in Hong Kong need not prepare a Hong Kong Offering Document in accordance with ~~Chapter~~ 6.1 of ~~the~~ this UT Code. This ETF must prepare a Product Description Document in both English and Chinese that meets the content requirements in Appendix C of ~~the~~ this UT Code (as modified by these guidelines) which is more particularly set out in **Annex (I)** to these guidelines.

---

<sup>2</sup> For avoidance of doubt, the term “ETFs” in these guidelines shall, where the context applies, mean ETFs authorized under the Code.



*General relief from ~~Chapter 8.6~~*

Unless otherwise stated in these guidelines, ETFs, whether local or overseas, must comply with all the applicable provisions governing index funds in ~~Chapter 8.6~~ of ~~the~~ this UT Code.

11. Relief from ~~Chapter 8.6~~(~~hih~~): Investment restrictions in ~~Chapter 8.6~~(~~hih~~)(i) and (ii) do not apply if:
- (a) an ETF adopts a representative sampling strategy which does not involve the full replication of the constituent securities of the underlying index in the exact weightings of such index;
  - (b) the strategy is clearly disclosed in the Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document of the ETF (as the case may be);
  - (c) the excess of the weightings of the constituent securities held by the ETF over the weightings in the index is caused by the implementation of the representative sampling strategy;
  - (d) any excess weightings of the ETF holdings over the weightings in the index must be subject to a maximum limit reasonably determined by the ETF after consultation with the SFC. In determining this limit, the ETF must consider the characteristics of the underlying constituent securities, their weightings and the investment objectives of the index and any other suitable factors;
  - (e) limits laid down by the ETF pursuant to paragraph ~~44112~~(d) above must be disclosed in the Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document (as the case may be);
  - (f) disclosure must be made in the ETF's semi-annual and annual reports as to whether the limits imposed by the ETF itself pursuant to paragraph ~~44112~~(d) have been complied with in full. If there is non-compliance with the said limits during the relevant reporting period, this must be reported to the SFC on a timely basis and an account for such non-compliance should be stated in the report relating to the period in which the non-compliance occurs or otherwise notified to investors; and
  - (g) nothing in paragraphs ~~44112~~(d), (e) and (f) above applies to an overseas ETF governed by an Acceptable ETF Regime or by the relevant overseas jurisdiction (see the Note to paragraph (d) in **Annex (III)** to these guidelines).
12. Disclosure of Risk Warnings under ~~Chapter 8.6~~(~~ikj~~): Provisions relating to disclosure of index funds information in ~~Chapter 8.6~~(~~ikj~~) do not apply where **Annex (I)** does not require the same. In particular, where proper risk warnings are disclosed, provisions relating to disclosure of risk warnings in ~~Chapter 8.6~~(~~ikj~~)(iv), (v), (vi), (vii), (x), (xi), (xii) and (xiv) need not be strictly adhered to.



13. Name of the ETF under ~~Chapter 8.6(mmm)~~: ~~Chapter 8.6(mmm)~~ does not apply if the name adopted is not misleading or deceptive as to the nature of the ETF and its investment objectives and strategy.

*Modified post-authorization notification and approval procedures*

- ~~14.~~ The notification and approval requirements under 11.1A and 11.7 of ~~the this~~ UT Code are modified to the following extent:

- (a) *Increase in Fees and Charges in 11.1A*: The prior notice requirements under 11.1A does not apply to adjustments in management fees if:
- (i) the proposed adjustments in management fees do not require holders' approval; and
  - (ii) either a notice for the fee adjustments is published as stated in paragraph 14(c) or where the ETF is governed by an Acceptable ETF Regime or in the relevant overseas jurisdiction (see the Note to paragraph (d) in **Annex (III)**), there is no notification requirement for this type of fee adjustments in that jurisdiction;
- (b) *Publication of NAV in Local Newspapers in 11.7*: On the basis that information is available to investors in accordance with paragraphs ~~1767~~ to ~~2124~~ in these guidelines (where applicable), the obligation under 11.7 to publish NAV in local newspapers is dispensed with. The management company must immediately notify the SFC as soon as practicable if dealing in units/shares on the SEHK ceases or is suspended.
- (c) Unless otherwise waived or provided for in paragraph ~~2454~~(g) below, all notices and public announcements made by ETFs in accordance with ~~the this UT~~ Code and these guidelines must be prepared in both English and Chinese.

*Note: for avoidance of doubt, nothing in paragraph ~~1454~~ shall exempt an ETF from compliance with 11.1, 11.4 and 11.5 of ~~the this UT~~ Code.*

~~15.~~ [deleted]

**~~Recommended Best Practice for the Publication of Key Features Summary by ETFs~~**

- ~~15.~~ —ETFs, whether local or overseas, may publish and distribute a Key Features Summary to investors in the following manner:

~~(a) The first Key Features Summary should be made available at or before the first date of trading in the Hong Kong market or the first date of initial public offering of the ETF in Hong Kong (whichever is earlier or applicable);~~

~~(b) Subsequent to the first Key Features Summary, an ETF should, at least, review and (if necessary) update its Key Features Summary on a half-yearly and yearly basis. It should also update the Key Features Summary whenever~~





~~there are material changes to the information contained in it. The Key Features Summary should be made available at the same time as the publication of each semi-annual and annual report of the ETF.~~

#### 16. ~~[deleted]~~

~~16. The use of Key Features Summary is a recommended best practice for ETFs. ETFs should consider the following when preparing the Key Features Summary:~~

~~(a) ETFs may at their discretion adopt their own format and make disclosure of their key information;~~

~~(b) ETFs may also consider using a single document to contain the product summary of various ETFs managed by the same management company;~~

~~(c) The recommended contents for a Key Features Summary are set out in **Annex (II)**. A Key Features Summary should be written in plain English and Chinese.~~

~~(d) If an ETF decides to issue a Key Features Summary (whether following the recommended contents in **Annex (II)** or not), the first Summary must be submitted for authorization by the SFC. For subsequent updates of data and figures in a Key Features Summary, these may be made without prior approval of the SFC. An ETF should file its Key Features Summary with the SFC each time it is published unless otherwise waived.~~

## Dissemination of trading information by ETFs

### *Local ETFs*

17. In addition to information commonly available for stocks during the trading hours of the SEHK (e.g. bid/ask prices and queuing displays), local ETFs must provide the following trading information to the public on a real time or near- real time basis unless otherwise waived, via any suitable channels in paragraph 18 below:

- (a) Estimated NAV or R.U.P.V.<sup>3</sup>;
- (b) Last closing NAV;
- (c) Notices for suspension and resumption of trading; and
- (d) Composition of constituent securities (where practicable).

17A. ~~Where an ETF adopts synthetic replication through the use of financial derivative instruments to replicate the index performance, the ETF should also publish the gross and net exposure to each counterparty and the value, nature and composition of collateral received (as a percentage of the ETF's NAV), where applicable.~~

<sup>3</sup> R.U.P.V. as used on the information pages of information vendors in relation to ETFs listed on the SEHK stands for "Reference Underlying Portfolio Value" which is updated at 15-second intervals during trading hours and is equivalent to the aggregate of the total value of the Index Basket Shares per Creation Unit (which is calculated by multiplying the nominal price of the Index Basket Share by the number of the respective Index Basket Shares) and the prior day estimated total cash component per Creation Unit divided by the number of Units in a Creation Unit.



18. Information in paragraphs 1767 (a) to (d) above may, where applicable, be made available to investors in Hong Kong through one or more of the following means:

- (a) ETF's own website; or
- (b) A hyperlink of (a) to the website of Hong Kong Exchange and Clearing Limited ("HKEx"); or
- (c) Information pages of information vendors which disseminate trading information of ETFs in their ordinary course of business and whose information is accessible by retail brokers in Hong Kong (whether as paid services or not); or
- (d) Any other channels that the SFC considers acceptable.

*Overseas ETFs that have cross-listing or cross-trading status on the SEHK*

19. Overseas ETFs authorized by the SFC that are cross-listed or cross-traded on the SEHK must provide local trading information in relation to their trading on the SEHK. Local trading information includes notices for suspension and resumption of trading on the SEHK. It is a recommended best practice for such overseas ETFs to provide their overseas markets' trading information that is of the same nature as described in paragraphs 1767 (a) to (d) above where trading hours of the relevant overseas market and those of the SEHK overlap.
20. Information provided to investors according to paragraph 19 may be made available via any of the channels stated in paragraph 18 or via the website of overseas exchanges on which such ETFs are traded.

*Prior disclosure in the product description document/Hong Kong offering document*

21. ETFs, whether local or overseas, must make prior disclosure of the types of trading information and channels through which such information is made available to investors in their Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document (as the case may be). An ETF should also disclose the type of trading information (falling within the recommended best practices in these guidelines) that is not made available to investors in its Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document (as the case may be).

21A. An ETF (whether local or overseas) should disclose the estimated total expense ratio of the scheme in the Product Description Document or Offering Document, where applicable.

*Publication of ETFs' materials in Hong Kong*

22. An ETF, whether local or overseas, must ensure that the following documents are made readily available to Hong Kong investors through any of the ETF's own website or such other channels as the SFC considers appropriate:
- (a) Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document (as the case may be);



- (b) The ETF's offering document or prospectus (as the case may be) prepared in accordance with the regulations of the Acceptable ETF Regime or the relevant overseas jurisdiction (see the Note to paragraph (d) in **Annex (III)**) ("ETF's Overseas Offering Document") (where applicable);
- (c) **Product KFS** (where applicable);
- (d) Latest version of the semi-annual and annual financial reports of the ETF; and
- (e) All notices and public announcements issued by the ETF in either the Acceptable ETF regime or the relevant overseas jurisdiction (see the Note to paragraph (d) in **Annex (III)**) and in Hong Kong.

*Note: Where an ETF is listed or traded on the SEHK, it may, but is not required to, make available the abovementioned documents to investors in Hong Kong by way of hyperlinks to the HKEx website.*

### **Streamlined recognition process for overseas ETFs listed in an acceptable ETF regime**

23. An overseas ETF that meets the core structural and operational requirements in ~~the~~ this **UT** Code and is regulated in an Acceptable ETF Regime, may be authorized through a streamlined recognition process. The specific relief in paragraph **2454** applies to this type of overseas ETF such that they will be deemed to have complied with certain **UT** Code requirements including constitutive documentation requirements, index acceptability and the prescribed contents for financial reports.

*Note: In determining whether a regime is an Acceptable ETF Regime, the regulatory principles set out in **Annex (III)** would be considered.*

- ~~24.~~ 24. An overseas ETF that complies with the conditions set out in **Annex (IVIV)** may rely on the following specific relief for a streamlined process for authorization in addition to the general relief in paragraphs **1124** to **1454**.

- (a) *Acceptability of Index in 8.6(efe)*: The index that such an overseas ETF tracks will be deemed to have complied with 8.6(efe)(i) to (v) except where such index or its methodology contradicts the fundamental principles of a representative, diversified, investible and transparent index.
- (b) *Reporting Requirements in 8.6(fgf)*: 8.6(fgf) only applies to (i) any significant events relating to the index that might affect the authorization or listing status of an overseas ETF in an Acceptable ETF Regime; and (ii) any other events in relation to the index that the Acceptable ETF Regime would require notification to investors. Notification of these events must be published in Hong Kong in both English and Chinese and notified to the SFC on a timely basis.
- (c) *Replacement of Index in 8.6(kkk)*: Subject to paragraphs **2454(a)** and **2454(g)** of these guidelines, 8.6(kkk) does not apply to the replacement of index. Any replacement of index must be notified to investors and the SFC on a timely basis.



- (d) *Disclosure in Financial Reports in 8.6~~(lm)~~ and Appendix E:* ETFs that have prepared their semi-annual and annual financial reports in accordance with their own governing overseas regulations, which reports are not qualified by their auditors, will be relieved from full compliance with the content requirements of 8.6~~(lm)~~ and Appendix E.
- (e) *Product Description Document:* Notwithstanding paragraph 1019 above, the Product Description Document for an ETF from an Acceptable ETF Regime does not have to set out all the details of the information stated in **Annex (I)** to these guidelines if:
- (i) The Product Description Document takes the form of a summary of the salient features of the ETF including appropriate risk warnings as to the level of disclosure contained in it. This Product Description Document has to be prepared in both English and Chinese;
  - (ii) The ETF's Overseas Offering Document is available to investors in Hong Kong via the ETF's own website, the website of the overseas exchange on which it is primary listed or the HKEx website (if applicable); and
  - (iii) The ETF's Overseas Offering Document mentioned in paragraph 2454(e)(ii) may be made available in either English or Chinese.
- (f) *Constitutive Documents:* The constitutive documents will be deemed to have complied with Appendix D of ~~the this UT~~ Code in so far as these are related to the structural and operational aspects of the ETF.
- Note:* *ETFs fall within the categories of Specialized Schemes under Chapter 8 of ~~the this UT~~ Code and the concept of Recognized Jurisdiction Schemes is not directly applicable. However, in considering whether the constitutive documents of an ETF from an Acceptable ETF Regime is in compliance with ~~the this UT~~ Code requirements, for example, Appendix D, the SFC would consider whether the home regulations in the Acceptable ETF Regime share similar principles in providing structural safeguards for investor protection. Accordingly, strict compliance with Appendix D and other operational requirements may not be required.*
- (g) *Notification and Language Requirement in respect of Notices under 11.1 to 11.2B:* Notices in relation to ~~scheme changes~~ongoing disclosures that require the SFC's prior approval pursuant to 11.1 of an ETF that is primarily regulated in an overseas jurisdiction have to be published or made generally available to investors in Hong Kong. Unless otherwise waived, these notices must be in both English and Chinese, and be published on a timely basis and in such manner as the ETF considers appropriate.

24A. The SFC may enter into any mutual recognition arrangement with other jurisdictions from time to time to facilitate cross-listing and offering of ETFs in each other's market. Please refer to the relevant circular published on the SFC's website at [www.sfc.hk](http://www.sfc.hk) for the specific relief granted to overseas ETFs under the relevant mutual recognition arrangement.



## Miscellaneous

- ~~§25.~~ These guidelines do not apply retrospectively to index tracking exchange traded funds already authorized on or before 24 October 2003.
- ~~24-26.~~ With respect to ETFs that have been submitted to the SFC for approval pursuant to ~~the this UT~~ Code but have not been authorized before 24 October 2003, they may elect to comply with ~~the this UT~~ Code as amended by these guidelines.
27. These guidelines do not preclude the right of the SFC to impose any conditions for the authorization of an ETF as may be reasonable in the circumstances.



## Annex (I)

### Information to be disclosed in the product description document

This list is not intended to be exhaustive. The SFC may require further information to be disclosed which may be necessary for investors to make an informed investment decision.

Summary of Information to be Disclosed	Sections under Appendix C and Chapters of <b>the this UT Code and Other Relevant Information for ETFs Authorized Pursuant to the ETF Guidelines</b>
Constitution of the ETF	C1
Investment Objectives and Restrictions	C2
Description of Underlying Index	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8.6(i)(i)</li> <li>• 8.6(i)(ii)</li> </ul>
Other Information regarding the Index	8.6(i)(xiii)
Means by which investors may obtain relevant information regarding the ETF and the index	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Types of real time or near-real time information of the ETF that is made available and the sources from which these information could be obtained, e.g. stock code, ticker symbol, website of the ETF etc.</li> <li>• 8.6(viii)</li> <li>• 8.6(ix)</li> </ul>
<b>Collateral policy and criteria</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C2A</b></li> </ul>
Operators and Principals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C343 + any other relevant operators such as participating dealers etc.</li> </ul>
Characteristics of Units/Shares	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C454 (if applicable) + trading lot size</li> <li>• C565</li> <li>• C676</li> <li>• C787</li> </ul>
Creation and Redemption Procedures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C9109 (if applicable) + procedures for buying/selling units/shares on the stock exchange + creation and redemption procedures of the underlying basket of stocks by participating dealers</li> <li>• C10110 (if applicable)</li> <li>• C11211</li> <li>• C12312</li> </ul>
Distribution Policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C1343</li> </ul>
Fees and Charges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C14514(a) (if applicable)</li> <li>• C14514(b) (see 6.16716 and 6.18918)</li> <li>• Fees borne by investors trading on the stock exchange, e.g. brokerage fee, transaction levy, stamp duty etc.</li> <li>• C14514(c) (as amended by these guidelines)</li> </ul> <p><i>Note: Fees should be clearly presented in tabular form</i></p>
Connected Party Transaction	C15615
Taxation	C16716



<p>Reports and Accounts</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C17817</li> <li>• C18918 or the website address on which the financial reports are published</li> <li>• C18A</li> </ul>
<p>Warnings</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C192119</li> <li>• Proper risks warnings suitable for index tracking ETFs, including those for tracking errors, liquidity of underlying securities, circumstances that may affect the accuracy and completeness in the calculation of the index etc. Note: With proper risk warnings, 8.6(k)(iv)- (vii), (x) – (xii) and (xiv) need not be strictly adhered to.</li> </ul>
<p>General Information, e.g. date of publication of the Product Description Document, constitutive documents available for inspection etc.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C20320</li> <li>• C21421</li> <li>• C22522</li> <li>• C22A</li> <li>• C23723</li> <li>• 6.15615</li> <li>• Provisions on stock lending</li> </ul>
<p>Termination of the ETF</p>	<p>C24824 (see 11.4 and 11.5)</p>
<p>Authorization conditions and Waivers Granted to the ETF</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Self-imposed limits for any excess weightings of the ETF holdings over the weightings in the index</li> <li>• Waivers granted from compliance with <del>the</del>-this UT Code and/or any authorization conditions imposed on the ETF</li> </ul>



**[deleted]**

**~~Recommended Contents for the Key Features Summary~~**

~~[Name of the ETF] [Date]~~

~~**Important** – This is only a summary of the key features of [the name of ETF] and is not intended to be or to replace the Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document/ETF's Overseas Offering Document (as the case may be). **You should read the Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document/ETF's Overseas Offering Document (as the case may be) carefully before you invest.** The Product Description Document/Hong Kong Offering Document/ETF's Overseas Offering Document (as the case may be) is available from your broker free of charge upon your request [or (where applicable), may be downloaded via the website of the HKEx (Website link: HKEx)].~~

~~You should consult your professional advisers if you have doubts about the contents of this summary and/or the Product Description Document/Hong Kong offering document/ETF's Overseas Offering Document (as the case may be).~~

~~**1. What is the ETF's objective and what index does it track?**~~

~~A: Describe the investment objective of the ETF and name the underlying index.~~

~~**2. Where is the ETF traded?**~~

~~A: State the exchange(s) on which the ETF is traded and whether it is fungible between markets.~~

~~**3. What is the index comprised of?** [Note: Information may be presented in tabular form where appropriate]~~

~~A: Describe the objective of the index, e.g. the sector/market it seeks to reflect.~~

~~**4. What is the strategy or methodology employed by the ETF in order to track the index?**~~

~~**5. How can I obtain market and trading information about the ETF and the underlying index?**~~

~~A: State the relevant information that investors should be aware of and provide the corresponding website addresses. For example:~~

- ~~– ETF's own website (if any);~~
- ~~– Latest index information and news (Website Link: index provider);~~
- ~~– HKEx announcement (Website Link: HKEx) (where applicable);~~
- ~~– Announcements/notices posted on the overseas exchange on which primary listing of the ETF takes place (Website Link: the primary overseas exchange where the ETF is being traded) (where applicable); and~~





- Sources where additional trading information could be found, e.g. names of information vendors.

A statement to alert investors that they should actively check the above information on a regular basis since the above information may materially impact on their investment holdings.

**6. Quick Facts** *[Note: Information may be presented in tabular form where appropriate], e.g.:*

- Stock code;
- Sources where the NAV, R.U.P.V, the underlying index level are published;
- Ticker symbol;
- Trading lot size;
- Main operators — e.g. management company, participating dealers, Hong Kong representative etc.; and
- Top 10 holdings of the ETF as of the date of the Key Features Summary.

**7. What are the risks associated with the ETF?** *[Note: Insert proper risk warnings depending on the nature of the ETF and the index, including but not limited to the following suggested items]*

- Liquidity risks;
- Tracking error risks and the circumstances under which tracking errors may occur;
- Trading risks — e.g. disruptions to the creation and redemption process, suspension of trading etc.;
- Risks and constraints arisen from the employment of certain strategies; and
- Applicable risk warnings required under Appendix C19 of the Code.

**8. How can I purchase and sell the ETF?**

**9. What are the fees and charges involved in this investment?** *[Note: Fees of the ETF should be clearly presented in tabular form]*

A: State all the fees and charges involved and divide them into at least the following four categories:

- a) Fees and charges payable by investors trading the ETF via the stock exchange
- b) Brokerage commission paid by investors in trading the ETF
- c) Fees payable by participating dealers in dealing directly with the ETF e.g. block creation and redemption
- d) Fees borne by the ETF

**10. Will I receive any income or dividend from the investment?**



**~~11. Who can I contact for enquiries or to obtain further information?~~**



## General principles for an acceptable ETF regime

In determining whether a regime is an Acceptable ETF Regime, the following regulatory principles would be considered:

- (a) The availability of a mutual co-operation and assistance agreement for fund management activities between the principal securities regulator of the Acceptable ETF Regime and the SFC;
- (b) The similarity or comparability of the overall securities regulatory framework provided by the overseas jurisdiction where there is substantial interest in the ETF and in which it is primarily listed. The SFC will consider the extent to which these overseas jurisdictions' structural and operational requirements and disclosure standards on ETFs are comparable or equivalent to the principles adopted by the SFC for regulating collective investment schemes;
- (c) The overall and combined effect of the rules and regulations, the regulatory infrastructure of an Acceptable ETF Regime where the ETF is primarily listed and in which there is substantial interest and the effectiveness of the administration of these rules and regulations, should be able to afford comparable investor protection to that provided under the Hong Kong regulatory framework; and
- (d) The overseas stock exchange on which primary listing of the ETF takes place should provide a system for efficient public dissemination of trading and other information relevant to the trading of ETFs. Information about the index which the ETF tracks is either published generally or otherwise made readily available to the public in electronic or other means.

*Note: It is acknowledged that the regulatory framework for ETFs in some overseas jurisdictions may meet substantially but not all of the above principles in **Annex (III)** for recognition as an Acceptable ETF Regime. In these circumstances, the SFC would consider on a case-by-case basis the extent to which these ETFs may be granted partial relief under these guidelines and if any corresponding or alternative safeguards for investor protection should be imposed in consideration of the relief being granted.*

Once it is established that an overseas ETF is regulated in an Acceptable ETF Regime, such ETF must also comply with the conditions in **Annex (IV)** in order to be eligible for the specific relief in paragraphs 2**343** and 2**454** of the guidelines.



## **Compliance conditions for overseas ETFs**

An overseas ETF that seeks to rely on the specific relief in paragraphs 2~~343~~<sup>343</sup> and 2~~454~~<sup>454</sup> of the guidelines must comply with the following conditions:

- (a) Compliance with the applicable laws and regulations of the relevant Acceptable ETF Regime;
- (b) Compliance with the applicable listing rules and trading rules of the overseas exchange on which the ETF is primarily listed;
- (c) There are no changes in the laws and regulations of the Acceptable ETF Regime and the relevant overseas listing rules governing the offering and the listing of the ETF that would materially affect the Acceptable ETF Regime's comparability with that of Hong Kong. Where any material changes would be made to the securities regulations or the applicable listing rules of the Acceptable ETF Regimes thereby affecting their comparability with those of Hong Kong, the ETF or its management company must inform the SFC as soon as practicable; and
- (d) The ETF complies in full with the applicable provisions in the guidelines.



## **Section III:**

# **Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes**

**(as marked up against the existing ILAS Code and highlighted in yellow to reflect further amendments made following the public consultation)**



SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION  
證券及期貨事務監察委員會

## Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes

~~First~~**Second** Edition pursuant to  
**Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571)**

~~April 2003~~ **[ ] [Date]**



### AMENDMENT

<b>Particulars</b>	<b>Paragraph</b>	<b>Section</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>
Interpretation	3.1A, 3.1B, 3.11A	3	1 August 2008
Post-Authorization Requirements	10.1, 10.1A, 10.1B, 10.4-10.13	10	1 August 2008
Information To Be Disclosed In The Principal Brochure	(n)	Appendix A	1 August 2008

### DELETION

<b>Particulars</b>	<b>Paragraph</b>	<b>Section</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>
Advertising Guidelines		Appendix E	1 August 2008



## **Implementation**

The effective date (“Effective Date”) of this ILAS Code is *[to insert date of gazetta]*.

As from the Effective Date, this ILAS Code will apply to new ILAS schemes for which applications for authorization are submitted to the Commission on or after the Effective Date.

As for (i) existing SFC-authorized ILAS schemes as of the Effective Date which continue to be marketed to the public in Hong Kong thereafter, and (ii) schemes for which applications for authorization were submitted to the Commission prior to the Effective Date (together referred to as “Existing Schemes”), they shall comply with this ILAS Code (other than the Product KFS and other relevant disclosure requirements as set out in the table below) as from the Effective Date.

A transitional period of 12 months from the Effective Date will be provided for Existing Schemes to comply with the Product KFS and other relevant disclosure requirements as shown below.

<b>Topics</b>	<b>Provisions of the revised ILAS Code</b>	<b>Existing Schemes</b>
<b>A. Product Key Facts Statement (“Product KFS”)</b>		<b>A transitional period of 12 months from the Effective Date will be provided.</b>
1) Issuance of a Product KFS in respect of each ILAS product	5.7	
<b>B. Enhanced Disclosure Requirements</b>		
1) Disclosure for ILAS with “with-profits”, or similar, features	6.4-6.5	
2) Enhanced disclosure in the ILAS offering document	5.4(b), 7.15, Appendix A (c)(iii), (e), (i) and (k)	

## **Explanatory Notes:**

- (a) The Securities and Futures Commission is empowered under section 104(1) of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) (the “SFO”) to authorize any collective investment ~~scheme and to impose any corresponding authorization conditions as it considers appropriate.~~ This Code, which is published pursuant to section 399(1) of the SFO. This Code on Investment-linked Assurance Schemes (“ILAS Code”), which forms part of the Handbook, provides guidance in relation to the authorization of a collective investment scheme that is an investment-linked assurance scheme. Any change or amendment to this ILAS Code will be made known to the industry and transitional periods for compliance will be allowed where necessary.





- (b) The Commission may review its authorization at any time and may modify, add to or withdraw such authorization, as it deems fit.
- (c) The issue of any advertisement, invitation or document to the public in Hong Kong to participate in an unauthorized investment-linked assurance scheme may amount to an offence under section 103(1) of the SFO. The Commission is empowered under section 105(1) of the SFO to authorize any advertisement, invitation or document referred to in section 103(1) and to impose any corresponding authorization conditions as it considers appropriate.
- (d) This ILAS Code is established having regard to the regulatory objectives of the Commission set out in section 4 of the SFO. The spirit of this ILAS Code should be observed.
- (e) The Commission may modify or relax the application of a requirement in this ILAS Code if it considers that, in particular circumstances, strict application of the requirement would operate in an unduly burdensome or unnecessarily restrictive manner.
- (f) This ILAS Code is made under section 399 of the SFO.
- (g) This ILAS Code does not have the force of law.



## Table of Contents

Part I: General matters	[•]
<b>Chapter 1: Authorization procedures</b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 2: Administrative arrangements</b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 3: Interpretation</b>	[•]
Part II: Authorization requirements	[•]
<b>Chapter 4: Applicant company</b>	[•]
<del>Chapter 5: Hong Kong Representative</del>	<del>9</del>
<b>Chapter 5: Operational requirements</b>	[•]
<b>Chapter 6: Guarantee and with-profits or similar features</b>	[•]
<del>Chapter 7: Guaranteed Funds</del>	<del>15</del>
<del>Chapter 8: Broker Managed Funds</del>	<del>17</del>
<del>Chapter 9: Investment-Linked Savings Plans</del>	<del>21</del>
Part III: Post-authorization requirements	[•]
<b>Chapter 10: Post-authorization requirements</b>	[•]
<b>APPENDICES</b>	
Appendix A: Information to be disclosed in the principal brochure	[•]
<del>Appendix B: Information to be disclosed in the Illustration Document</del>	<del>[•]</del>
Appendix CB: Contents of the constitutive documents	[•]
<del>Appendix D: Compliance Checklist</del>	<del>[•]</del>

---



## Part I: General matters

### Chapter 1: Authorization procedures

#### General

- 1.1 Investment-linked assurance schemes are insurance policies issued by an Authorized Insurer and they are normally expected to comply with the applicable provisions of ~~this~~the Handbook, including without limitation, all of the applicable provisions of this ILAS Code in order to be authorized in Hong Kong by the SFC pursuant to section 104 of the SFO.
- 1.2 Authorized Insurers are under the prudential regulation of the Insurance Authority. The intermediaries selling investment-linked assurance schemes, including insurance agents and brokers, are subject to a self-regulatory system through self-regulatory organisations of the insurance industry. These organisations are also subject to the oversight of the Insurance Authority. Therefore, issues such as how the Authorized Insurers operate, their financial conditions or their business conduct are not within the Commission's regulatory ambit.
- 1.3 Applications for authorization which seek waivers of any of these provisions must give detailed reasons why waivers are sought.

#### Nomination of an individual as approved person

4.31.4 According to sections 104(2) and 105(2) of the SFO, an individual must be approved for the purposes of being served by the Commission with notices and decisions for, respectively, the scheme and the issue of any related advertisement, invitation or document. An applicant for authorization is, therefore, required to nominate an individual for approval by the Commission as an approved person.

4.41.5 An approved person should:

- (a) have his/her ordinary residence in Hong Kong;



- (b) inform the Commission of his/her current contact details, including, in so far as applicable, the address, telephone and facsimile numbers, and electronic mail address;
- (c) be capable of being contacted by the Commission by post, telephone, facsimile and electronic mail during business hours;
- (d) inform the Commission of any change in his/her contact details within 14 days after the change takes place; and
- (e) comply with any other requirements as the Commission considers appropriate.

**4.51.6** An individual approved by the Commission as an approved person for a scheme shall generally be approved also for the issue of any advertisement, invitation or document made in respect of that scheme.

### **Documents to be supplied to the Commission**

**4.61.7** An applicant for authorization of a scheme should ~~lodge with the Commission~~ **complete and submit the Application Form Checklist which is available on the Commission's website** together with the following to the Commission upon application for authorization:

***Note: The Application Form is available on the Commission's website.***

- ~~(a)~~ **(a)** ~~The~~ **the** scheme's ~~principal brochure~~ **offering documents** and constitutive documents;
- ~~(b)~~ **(b)** ~~Copies of any material contracts;~~
- ~~(c)~~ **(c)** ~~All other sales literature, proposed advertisements and printed material intended to be issued in Hong Kong to prospective scheme participants;~~
- ~~(d)~~ **(d)** ~~A~~ **the Information C** ~~hecklist of compliance with the Code (see Appendix D);~~ **this Code on the Commission's website;**



Note: The Information Checklist is available on the Commission's website.

- ~~(e) The latest audited report and corporate information in respect of the applicant company and other relevant parties, where applicable;~~
- ~~(c) such other documents as may be required by the SFC from time to time;~~
- ~~(d) (f) The application fee in the form of a cheque payable to the "Securities & Futures Commission". The current fee schedule is available on request from the Commission; and~~ **and**

Note: The current fee schedule is available on the Commission's website.

- ~~(e) (g) The~~ **the** letter nominating an individual to be approved by the Commission as an approved person containing the individual's name, employer, position held and contact details, including, in so far as applicable, the address, telephone and facsimile numbers, and electronic mail address.

### Authorized Insurer

- 1.8 Insurers are required to obtain authorization to carry on Class C of Long Term Business under the Insurance Companies Ordinance (Chapter 41 of the Laws of Hong Kong) before applying for authorization of its investment-linked assurance schemes.



## Chapter 2: Administrative arrangements

### Administrative arrangements

~~2.1—The Commission has delegated to the Committee on Investment-Linked Assurance and Pooled Retirement Funds (ILAC), to an Executive Director and to the Director (Investment Products), its power to authorize investment-linked assurance schemes and pooled retirement funds. Powers are normally exercised by ILAC when new management groups or new policy issues are considered; otherwise powers are normally exercised by the Director (Investment Products).~~

2.1     ~~2.2—The Commission has established ILAC under section 8(1) of the SFO for the purposes of:~~ According to section 8 of the SFO, the Commission is empowered to set up committees, whether for advisory or other purposes. The Commission will establish a Products Advisory Committee for the purpose of consultation and advice on matters which may relate to collective investment schemes within the scope of this ILAS Code of the Handbook. The remit of the Products Advisory Committee and its membership will be set out in its Terms of Reference.

- ~~(a)—assisting the Commission in the performance of its functions to ensure the effective regulation of the marketing of investment-linked assurance schemes and pooled retirement funds;~~
- ~~(b)—authorizing investment-linked assurance schemes and pooled retirement funds pursuant to section 104(1) of the SFO;~~
- ~~(c)—imposing conditions on the authorization of investment-linked assurance schemes and pooled retirement funds pursuant to section 104(1) of the SFO;~~
- ~~(d)—granting waivers from this Code; and~~
- ~~(e)—considering whether there should be any amendments to the legislation relating to investment-linked assurance schemes and pooled retirement funds and to this Code and making recommendations to the Commission accordingly.~~



## **Constitution**

~~2.3 The constitution of ILAC is:~~

### *Chairman*

~~(a) Any Executive Director of the SFC;~~

### *Members (11)*

~~(b) Non-executive Director of the SFC;~~

~~(c) Director (Investment Products), SFC (ex-officio and deputizes as Chairman in the absence of the Chairman);~~

~~(d) Representative of the Commissioner of Insurance;~~

~~(e) Representative of the Mandatory Provident Fund Schemes Authority;~~

~~(f) Chairman of the Life Insurance Council (ex-officio);~~

~~(g) Life assurance company member;~~

~~(h) Retirement fund company member;~~

~~(i) Person nominated by the SFC;~~

~~(j) Actuary member;~~

~~(k) Trustee company member; and~~

~~(l) Appointment (l) ad personam.~~

### *Alternate Members (4)*

~~(m) Alternate life assurance company member;~~



~~(n) — Alternate retirement fund company member;~~

~~(o) — Alternate actuary member; and~~

~~(p) — Alternate trustee company member.~~

### **~~Quorum & Meetings~~**

~~2.4 — The quorum for any meeting of ILAC is four members, one of whom must be an Executive Director or Director of the Commission and one of whom must be employed by a life assurance or retirement fund company. ILAC has appointed a staff member of the SFC as Secretary. The Secretary attends ILAC's discussions but has no vote.~~

~~2.5 — On request, the Commission will give reasons for decisions reached.~~

~~2.6 — Under section 10(4) of the SFO, the Commission may concurrently perform any function, power or duty which it has delegated but the Commission does not intend to exercise this right by reviewing a decision of ILAC except where there has been:~~

~~(a) — a manifest error;~~

~~(b) — an application of defective procedures; or~~

~~(c) — a manifest misinterpretation of this Code.~~

### **~~Procedure for Amendments to the Code~~**

~~2.7 — ILAC may make recommendations to the Commission whenever it considers that the provisions of this Code should be amended or extended. If the Commission accepts ILAC's recommendations, any such changes or amendments will be made known to the industry and transitional periods for compliance will be allowed where necessary.~~

### **Data privacy**





2.2 ~~2.8~~—The information requested under [the this ILAS](#) Code may result in the applicant providing the Commission with personal data as defined in the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance. The data supplied will only be used by the Commission to perform its functions, in the course of which it may match, compare, transfer or exchange personal data with data held or obtained by the Commission, government bodies, other regulatory authorities, corporations, organizations or individuals in Hong Kong or overseas for the purpose of verifying those data. Subject to the limits in section 378 of the SFO, the Commission may disclose personal data to other regulatory bodies. You may be entitled under the Personal Data (Privacy) Ordinance to request access to or to request the correction of any data supplied to the Commission, in the manner and subject to the limitations prescribed. All enquiries should be directed to the Data Privacy Officer at the SFC.



## Chapter 3: Interpretation

Unless otherwise defined, words and expressions used in this ILAS Code are as defined in the SFO:

3.1 ~~3.1A~~—“Advertising Guidelines” means the Advertising Guidelines Applicable to Collective Investment Schemes Authorized under the Product Codes.

3.2 ~~3.1B~~—“applicant company” means the company which applies to the Commission, directly or through an authorized representative, to have its scheme authorized pursuant to this ILAS Code.

3.3 ~~3.2~~—“approved person” has the meaning assigned to it by section 102(1) of the SFO.

~~3.3~~—“broker managed fund” means an internal life or pension fund of an insurance company with an external fund manager, offered as an investment link to one or more of the company’s insurance policies.

3.4 ~~“Authorized Insurer” means an insurance company authorized under the Insurance Companies Ordinance to carry on a relevant class of insurance business in Hong Kong.~~

3.5 ~~3.4~~—“collective investment scheme” has the meaning assigned to it by section 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to the SFO.

3.6 ~~3.5~~—“Commission” or “SFC” means the Securities and Futures Commission referred to in section 3(1) of the SFO.

~~3.6~~—“connected person” in relation to a company means:

~~(a) any person or company beneficially owning, directly or indirectly, 20% or more of the ordinary share capital of that company or able to exercise, directly or indirectly, 20% or more of the total votes in that company;~~

~~(b) any person or company controlled by a person who or which meets one or both of the descriptions given in (a);~~

~~(c) any member of the group of which that company forms part; or~~

~~(d) any director or officer of that company or of any of its connected persons as defined in (a), (b) or (c).~~



- ~~3.7 “constitutive documents” means the documents which establish and govern the existence and operation of a scheme and includes the policy document in the case of a scheme established pursuant to an insurance contract and the trust deed in the case of a scheme established under trust.~~
- ~~3.8 “insurance company” means a company authorized by the Insurance Authority under the Insurance Companies Ordinance to carry on a relevant class of insurance business in Hong Kong.~~
- 3.8 “Handbook” means the SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds, Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and Unlisted Structured Investment Products.
- 3.9 “investment-linked assurance scheme” means an insurance policy of the “linked long-term” class as defined in Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Insurance Companies Ordinance, other than a policy of which the predominant purpose is life assurance and not investment.
- 3.10 “investment options” means a range of investment choices which are available for scheme participants to choose and may include investment choices that are linked to SFC-authorized funds and/or other pools of assets internally managed on a discretionary basis by the Authorized Insurer, where the returns from the scheme are calculated with reference to the performance of investment choices selected by a scheme participant, whether or not an Authorized Insurer actually invests in the selected investment choices (and the Authorized Insurer does not have to) and notwithstanding scheme participants do not have any ownership or rights over the underlying funds/assets of the investment choices even where the Authorized Insurer has invested in the selected investment choice.
- ~~3.10 “investment-linked savings plan” means a unit-linked investment plan established under an investment contract where notional units linked to the performance of authorized funds or other financial instruments are issued to participants in return for their contributions.~~
- ~~3.11 “licensed person” has the meaning assigned to it by section 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to the SFO.~~
- 3.11 “offering document” means the principal brochure for distribution in Hong Kong containing the information required by Appendix A of this ILAS Code, and any other



information necessary for prospective scheme participants to make an informed judgement about the scheme.

3.12 ~~3.11A~~ “Product Code” means any of the following codes administered by the Commission:

~~(a) (a)~~ Code on Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds

~~(b) (b)~~ Code on Investment-Linked Assurance Scheme

~~(c) (c)~~ Code on Pooled Retirement Funds

~~(d) (d)~~ SFC Code on MPF Products

3.13 ~~3.12~~ “principal brochure” means that document, or documents issued together, issued by an applicant company, containing information on a scheme as stipulated in Appendix A.

3.14 ~~“Product Key Facts Statement” means the Product Key Facts Statement which is the statement required pursuant to 5.7 Chapter 5 in respect of each scheme.~~

~~3.13 “registered institution” has the meaning assigned to it by section 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to the SFO.~~

3.15 ~~3.14~~ “scheme participants” means the policy or contract owners and, upon the death of the owner, the beneficiaries appointed by him/her under the scheme.

3.16 ~~“SFO” means the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Chapter 571 of the Laws of Hong Kong).~~

3.17 ~~3.15~~ “substantial financial institution” means an authorized institution as defined in section 2(1) of the Banking Ordinance (Chapter 155 of the Laws of Hong Kong), or financial institution with a minimum paid-up capital of HK\$150,000,000 or its equivalent in foreign currency.



## Part II: Authorization requirements

### Chapter 4: Applicant company

#### Regulatory status of applicant company

4.1 ~~4.1~~—No investment-linked assurance scheme will be authorized pursuant to this ILAS Code unless the applicant company is ~~authorized under the Insurance Companies Ordinance to carry on the relevant class of insurance business in Hong Kong~~ Authorized Insurer. If the applicant company ceases to be authorized by the Insurance Authority, any existing authorization of the scheme will normally lapse.

#### Responsibilities of applicant company

4.2 ~~4.2~~—The applicant company will be responsible for observing all requirements of ~~this~~ ILAS Code and any conditions imposed by the Commission in granting authorization during the continued enjoyment of that authorization, except to the extent that the Commission grants waivers in writing.

4.3 ~~4.3~~—The applicant company is responsible for whatever information is given to the Commission on its behalf and should use its best ~~endeavors~~ endeavours to ensure that statements of intention in printed matter are followed.

4.4 ~~4.4~~—If a scheme contains a guaranteed investment option, such guarantee should be provided either by the applicant company or a substantial financial institution acceptable to the Commission.

4.5 ~~4.5~~—The applicant company shall:

- (a) use its best ~~endeavors~~ endeavours to carry on and conduct its business in a proper and efficient manner and will ensure that any scheme to which the constitutive documents relate is conducted in a proper and efficient manner; and
- (b) exercise best endeavours and due diligence to ensure that the marketing of the scheme is carried out professionally, honestly and fairly.



## [Chapter 5: Hong Kong Representative]

(deleted)



## Chapter 65: Operational requirements

### Scheme documentation

Matters to be disclosed in the *Principal Brochure offering document*

- 5.1 ~~6.1~~—An authorized scheme must issue an up-to-date principal brochure offering document, which should contain ~~the~~all information (including but not limited to product features and risks factors associated with the scheme) necessary for prospective scheme participants to be able to make an informed judgment of the investment proposed to them, and in particular should contain the information listed in Appendix A.

English and Chinese *Principal Brochure offering document*

- 5.2 ~~6.2~~—Except as provided herein, the information required in Appendix A offering document must be provided prepared in ~~the~~ English and Chinese ~~languages~~. The Commission may waive the requirement that the information be provided in both languages on a case-by-case basis where the applicant company satisfies the Commission that the scheme will only be offered to persons fully conversant in the language in which it is intended to publish the information.

*Illustration document*

- 5.3 ~~6.3~~—An illustration document must be prepared by the insurance company Authorized Insurer in conjunction with each proposed investment. ~~Alternatively, the Commission may allow the provision of a standard illustration for each scheme, provided that the surrender values illustrated are for a contract with a term based on a maximum commission scale and a minimum premium requirement by each prospective scheme participant.~~ This document must be provided to the scheme participant for his review and signature prior to signing of the application form.
- 5.4 ~~6.4~~—The minimum requirements for the information to be included in the illustration document are set out below. Subject to the approval of the SFC Commission, the insurance company Authorized Insurer may customize the document to include additional information provided that such additional information is not misleading and does not otherwise detract from the information disclosed in the minimum requirements.

- (a) Surrender values



The ~~insurance company~~Authorized Insurer is required to illustrate, what the scheme participant would be expected to receive if he redeems at the end of each of the first 5 years of the contract, and for every fifth year thereafter until maturity, after deduction of all relevant charges. The computation of these surrender values shall not take into account any non-guaranteed returns, including, without limitation, any discretionary bonus, dividend payments, reimbursements of charges. These expected surrender values should be based on at least 2 different assumptions on the rate of return, ~~currently set at a low of not more than 5% and a high of not more than 9% p.a. respectively. [These rates may be subject to change by the Commission after consultation with the industry].~~

Note: For the avoidance of doubt, assumed rates of return may still be used in the illustration document and further guidance is available on the Commission's website.

(b) Prescribed statements

The following statements should appear ~~as shown in Appendix B~~in the illustration document:

*THE ASSUMED RATES USED BELOW ARE FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES. THEY ARE NEITHER GUARANTEED NOR BASED ON PAST PERFORMANCE. THE ACTUAL RETURN MAY BE DIFFERENT!*

IMPORTANT:

THIS IS A SUMMARY ILLUSTRATION OF THE SURRENDER VALUES OF [Name of Product]. IT IS INTENDED TO SHOW THE IMPACT OF FEES AND CHARGES ON SURRENDER VALUES BASED ON THE ASSUMPTIONS STATED BELOW AND IN NO WAY AFFECTS THE TERMS OF CONDITIONS STATED IN THE POLICY DOCUMENT.

The following statements should be clearly disclosed before the ~~investors~~scheme participant's signature:

**Warning: You should only invest in this product if you intend to pay the premium for the whole of your chosen premium payment term. Should you terminate this product early, you may suffer a significant loss ~~as illustrated above.~~**





I confirm having read and understood the information provided in this illustration and received the principal brochure.

Note: A format for the illustration document is contained in Appendix B available on the Commission's website.

#### *Application form*

- 5.5 ~~6.5~~—The entitlement of the investor scheme participant to the cooling-off period must be prominently displayed at the bottom of the application form immediately above the space for signature ~~in these words:~~ The language for the cooling-off period should comply with the prevailing cooling off initiative issued by Hong Kong Federation of Insurers from time to time.

#### ~~"Cancellation Right and Refund of Premiums~~

~~I understand that I have the right to cancel and obtain a refund of any premium(s) paid less any market value adjustment, by giving written notice. Such notice must be signed by me and received directly by [name and address of insurance company's Hong Kong registered office] within 21 days from the date of this application, or 14 days from the date of issue of the policy [or contract, as applicable] if later."~~

- 5.6 ~~6.6~~—No scheme application form may be provided to any member of the public unless it is accompanied by the principal brochure offering document and the illustration document. To that end the application form should include a statement to the effect that it should only be issued in conjunction with the principal brochure offering document and the illustration document.

#### Product KFS key facts statement

- 5.7 An authorized scheme must issue an up-to-date Product KFSey Facts Statement. Such statement shall be deemed to form a part of the offering document and shall contain information that enables prospective scheme participant to comprehend the key features and risks of the product.

Note: An illustration template of the Product KFS is available on the Commission's website.



#### *Inclusion of performance data*

- 5.8 ~~6.7~~—If performance data or estimated yield is quoted, the Commission may require supporting documentation. No forecast or illustration of the scheme’s future performance may be made in authorized scheme documents except for the illustration of surrender values or where an investment return at a certain rate is guaranteed.

#### *Naming of unauthorized collective investment schemes*

- 5.9 ~~6.8~~—As a general principle any naming of collective investment schemes in authorized scheme documents should be restricted to those which are authorized by the Commission pursuant to section 104(1) of the SFO.

#### *Contents of constitutive documents*

- 5.10 ~~6.9~~—The constitutive documents of a scheme should contain the information listed in Appendix ~~C~~B.
- 5.11 ~~6.10~~—Nothing in the constitutive documents may provide for the parties thereto to be exempted from any liability to scheme participants arising out of any breach of trust through fraud or ~~culpable~~ negligence or imposed on them under Hong Kong law or the law of the scheme’s place of domicile, under any trust deed or under any contract entered into, nor to be indemnified against any such liability by scheme participants or at scheme participants’ expense.

#### **Cooling-off period**

- 5.12 ~~6.11~~—A scheme must allow an investor a scheme participant to withdraw unconditionally within the cooling-off period, subject to a market value adjustment (“MVA”). ~~This cooling-off period will extend to the later of 14 days after the date of issue of the new contract; or 21 days after the date on which the application for the new contract is signed. in accordance with the prevailing cooling off initiative issued by Hong Kong Federation of Insurers from time to time.~~
- 5.13 ~~6.12~~—Any such MVA must be calculated solely with reference to the loss the ~~insurance company~~Authorized Insurer or contract issuer might make in realizing the value of any assets acquired through investment of the premiums made under the contract. It shall



therefore not include any allowance for expenses or commissions in connection with the issuance of the contract.

## Fees and charges

5.14 ~~6.13~~—Where a scheme proposes to invest in collective investment schemes managed or distributed by the same company or group, all initial charges of the underlying funds must be waived but recurrent management fees and charges may be levied proportionate to the amount invested.

5.15 ~~6.14~~—The level/basis of calculation of all costs and charges payable from the scheme's property must be clearly stated, with percentages expressed on a per annum basis, where applicable. The aggregate level of fees for investment management or advisory functions should also be disclosed.

5.16 ~~6.15~~—If a performance fee is levied, ~~the fee can only be payable: such fee shall not create an incentive for the Authorized Insurer insurance company or its delegates to take excessive risks in the hope of increasing its performance fee.~~

*Various methodologies may be used for the charging and accrual of performance fees and normally, such methodologies shall ensure that cumulative gains are offset in some way by cumulative losses (i.e. "high-on-high" basis or the scheme's excess performance as compared against a benchmark).*

5.17 The performance fee can only be payable:

- (a) no more frequently than annually; and
- (b) ~~only~~ if the net asset value per unit exceeds the net asset value per unit on which the performance fee was last calculated and paid (i.e. on a "high-on-high" basis).

*Note: Notwithstanding 5.17(b), the performance fee may also be calculated with reference to the performance of a benchmark or an asset class and the performance fee is only payable upon outperformance of the net asset value per unit/share vis-à-vis that of the benchmark or asset class.*

In the case where a scheme or the ~~fund~~investment option(s) linked to the scheme is not unitized, a certificate from an actuary must be provided to the Commission on an annual basis to certify compliance with the foregoing except where:



- (a) there exists a year-on-year guarantee on investment return where the deficiency, if any, between the guaranteed return and the actual return is credited into the fund-scheme account not less frequently than annually; or
- (b) the scheme is a deposit administration policy in which investment returns may be declared by a company, in its discretion, at or above a stated minimum rate not less frequently than annually.



## Chapter 7: 6: Guaranteed Funds Guarantee and with-profits or similar features

### Guarantee features

The following criteria shall apply to a scheme which contains a guarantee feature or an investment fund option in which a guaranteed amount will be paid to scheme participants at a specific date in the future.

### **Guarantor**

- 6.1 7.1—If the guarantor is an entity other than the insurance company Authorized Insurer which issues the policy, it must be a substantial financial institution acceptable to the Commission.

### **Disclosure**

- 6.2 7.2 The principal brochure of the scheme must contain:
- (a) the name of the guarantor (if other than the insurance company Authorized Insurer which issues the policy) and the terms and conditions of the guarantee;
  - (b) where applicable, a warning statement in relation to all material conditions which affect the scope or validity of the guarantee including, where relevant, the condition that the guarantee only applies to scheme participants who hold their investment until the date specified in the guarantee and that termination or withdrawal before such date are fully exposed to fluctuations in the value of the fund's assets investment option and/or subject to penalties; and
  - (c) an illustration or description to clearly demonstrate the guarantee mechanism.

### Guaranteed Funds with Discretionary Benefits

### Guarantee features and discretionary benefits features

- 6.3 7.3—In relation to an insurance arrangement, if it is stated that discretionary benefits will or may be paid to scheme participants in excess of the guaranteed amount, and the amounts of those benefits are determined at the discretion of the policy issuer, the principal brochure of the scheme must contain:



- (a) a statement to the effect that the [name of policy issuer], at its sole discretion, has the right to retain investment income of the [name of investment ~~fund~~option] in excess of that required to be set aside to meet the guaranteed benefits under the [name of investment ~~fund~~option];
- (b) a readily comprehensible description of the methods of determining the discretionary benefits, including the following information, to the extent applicable:
- (l) the reporting date; and
- (ll) **(i) for a participating product where the policy holder has a right to participate in profits from the long term fund of the policy issuer or any part of that fund:**
- ~~(i) (i)~~—details of the fund or part fund to which the right relates;
- ~~(ii) (ii)~~—the principles on which the distribution of profits among policy holders and shareholders is based and whether these principles are derived from the constitution of the policy issuer or otherwise;
- ~~(iii) (iii)~~—the bonus rates declared immediately prior to the reporting date and for the four years previous; *and*
- ~~(iv) (iv)~~—the proportion of total distributed profits that was distributed to shareholders immediately prior to the reporting date and for the four years previous;
- (ii) for an investment-linked product:**
- (i) a description of the method which will be used to calculate unit prices from time to time; *and*
- (ii) the percentage changes in unit prices for the five yearly intervals immediately preceding the reporting date;
- (iii) for an investment account product:**



- (i) a description of the method which will be used to calculate the interest rate for each period; *and*
  - (ii) the rate of interest declared immediately prior to the reporting date and for the four years previous; and
- (c) a statement that past performance should not be taken as an indication of future performance.

*Note: For investment fundsoption with less than five years experiencetrack record, figures for shorter periods may be shown, provided the date of commencement is shown.*

### **With-profits or similar features**

*The following shall apply to a scheme with “with-profits” or similar features where the Authorized Insurer can impose a market value adjustment. Where such scheme or any investment option also has guarantee features and discretionary benefits features, the provisions in 6.1-6.3 shall also apply.*

**6.4** As regards a scheme or an investment option with a with-profits or similar features where the Authorized Insurer invests in a mixture of assets, and retains the absolute discretion to declare a rate of return (commonly known as "bonus") determined by reference to the performance of the underlying assets and other factors and is promised on the basis that the ups and downs of the investment performance can be smoothed out over a period, and the Authorized Insurer may, amongst other things, reduce the rate of bonus and/or apply a market value adjustment to the policy value or withdrawal amount in respect of any withdrawals (whether or not this may be on a retrospective basis), the following must be disclosed in the offering document:

(a) (i) a statement to the effect that scheme participants' withdrawal amount may be significantly reduced by the market value adjustments as a result of such with-profits or similar features;

(b) (ii) the extent to which the investment can be deducted by such market value adjustments;

(c) (iii) a statement as to whether the Authorized Insurer has the sole discretion to determine the market value adjustment level;



(d) ~~(iv)~~ a statement as to how the prevailing rate of market value adjustments is disclosed to scheme participants from time to time; and

(e) ~~(v)~~ a statement as to whether any policy issued by the scheme is subject to any market value adjustments.

6.5 An Authorized Insurer must keep scheme participants informed of any exercise of the market value adjustment relating to a scheme having with-profits ~~or similar~~ features.





## [Chapter 8: Broker Managed Funds]

(deleted)



## [Chapter 9: Investment-Linked Savings Plans]

(deleted)



## Part III: Post-authorization requirements

### Chapter ~~107~~: Post-authorization requirements

#### Scheme changes

7.1 ~~10.1~~—The proposed changes to a scheme in respect of the following must be submitted to the Commission for prior approval:

- (a) changes to constitutive documents;
- (b) changes of key operators (including the applicant company / management company and its delegates ~~and Hong Kong representative~~) and their regulatory status and controlling shareholder;
- (c) changes in investment objectives, policies and restrictions (including the purpose or extent of use of derivatives), fee structure and dealing and pricing arrangements; and
- (d) any other changes that may materially prejudice scheme participants' rights or interests.

7.2 ~~10.1A~~———For changes to a scheme that require the Commission's prior approval pursuant to ~~10.1~~, 7.1, the Commission will determine whether scheme participants should be notified and the period of notice (if any) that should be applied before the changes are to take effect. The revised ~~principal brochure~~offering document as a result of such changes should be submitted to the Commission for prior authorization.

*Notes: (1) Normally, the Commission will expect that one month's prior written notice (or such longer period as required under applicable laws and regulations or the provisions as set out in the ~~principal brochure~~offering document or constitutive documents) should be provided to scheme participants in respect of the changes. However, the Commission may permit a shorter period of notice if the change is not significant or may if it is not practicable for the applicant to do so due to circumstances beyond its control. The Commission may also require a longer period of notice (up to three months) in exceptional circumstances.*



- (2) For the purposes of ~~10.1A~~, 7.2, significant changes would include, for example, changes in investment objectives or major investment policies, and fee structure.
- (3) For any increase in fees and charges from the current level as stated in the principal brochure up to the maximum level permitted by the constitutive documents, prior approval from the Commission is not required, but no less than one month's prior notice must be given to scheme participants. However, the Commission may permit a shorter period of notice if the change is not significant or if it is not practicable for the applicant to do so due to circumstances beyond its control.

7.3 ~~10.1B~~ For changes to a scheme that do not require the Commission's prior approval pursuant to ~~10.1~~, 7.1, unless there is a specified minimum prior notice period in this ILAS Code, the applicant company should inform scheme participants as soon as reasonably practicable of any information concerning the scheme which is necessary to enable scheme participants to appraise the position of the scheme. The ~~principal brochure~~ offering document may be updated to incorporate such changes and reissued without further authorization provided that the content and format of such document remains fundamentally the same as the version previously authorized. The revised ~~principal brochure~~ offering document must be filed with the Commission, together with a marked-up version against the previously filed version, within ~~two weeks~~ one week from the date of issuance.

Note: Without prejudice to the foregoing, the Authorized Insurer should inform scheme participants as soon as reasonably practicable of any material adverse change in the financial conditions or business of the key counterparties that it is aware of. 'Key counterparties' include but are not limited to the Authorized Insurers and guarantors (where relevant).

7.4 ~~10.2~~—The constitutive documents may be altered without consulting scheme participants provided that the proposed alteration:

- (a) is necessary to make possible compliance with fiscal or other statutory or official requirements; or
- (b) does not materially prejudice scheme participants' interest, does not to any extent release the parties from any liability to participants and does not increase the costs and charges payable under the scheme.



7.5 ~~40.3~~—The Commission may accept undertakings from an applicant company to delay making a required amendment to a document until an opportune time, but in such cases the Commission may impose a reasonable time limit for carrying out the required amendment, and require a written undertaking from an applicant company to comply, in the interim period, with the substance of the requirement.

~~40.4 (Repealed)~~

### **Withdrawal of authorization**

7.6 ~~40.5~~—Following the authorization of a scheme, the applicant company should, subject to ~~40.6~~7.7 below, give ~~at least~~ three months' notice or any shorter notice period as may be allowed by the Commission if it is not practicable for the applicant to do so due to circumstance beyond its control, to scheme participants of any intention not to maintain such authorization. Such notice should be submitted to the Commission for prior approval and contain reasons for the withdrawal of authorization, consequences of the withdrawal, any proposed changes in the operation of the scheme and their effects on existing scheme participants, the alternatives available to scheme participants (including, if possible, a right to switch without charge into another authorized scheme) and, where applicable, an estimate of any relevant expenses and who is expected to bear them.

### **Merger or termination**

7.7 ~~40.6~~—Where a scheme or a fundan investment option linked to the scheme is to be merged or terminated, in addition to following any procedures set out in the constitutive documents or governing law, notice shall be given to scheme participants. Such notice should be submitted to the Commission for prior approval and shall contain the reasons for the merger or termination, the relevant provisions under the constitutive documents that enable such merger or termination, the alternatives available to participants (including, if possible, a right to switch without charge into another authorized scheme or fundinvestment option), the estimated costs of the merger or termination and who is expected to bear them.

### **Advertising materials**



7.8 ~~40.7~~—Advertisements and other invitations to invest in a scheme must comply with the Advertising Guidelines. All advertisements must be submitted to the Commission for authorization prior to their issue or publication in Hong Kong, unless exempted under section 103 of the SFO. For the avoidance of doubt, even if an advertisement is exempted from obtaining authorization from the Commission under the SFO, the applicant company must ensure that the advertisement or invitation complies with the Advertising Guidelines.

7.9 ~~40.8~~—Where authorization by the Commission is required, it is recommended that the applicant company nominate one person, such as the Approved Person or any other persons acceptable to the Commission, based in Hong Kong to liaise with the Commission. Authorization may be varied or withdrawn by the Commission as it deems fit. Once authorized, the advertisement may be used in any distribution media and reissued without further authorization with updated performance information of schemes and general market commentary provided that the content and format of such advertisement remain fundamentally the same as the version previously authorized and the advertisement, when reissued, is in compliance with the Advertising Guidelines.

*Note: For radio, television, cinema or other time-limiting advertisements / broadcasts, the script of any verbal statements in such advertisements should be submitted for the Commission's advance clearance, followed by the demo of the broadcast (e.g. digital files) for formal authorization.*

7.10 ~~40.9~~—The applicant company must keep adequate records of the advertisements issued, either in actual form or by way of a copy of the final proof, and the relevant supporting documents for substantiation of information presented thereon. Such records must be retained for at least 3three years from the latest date of publication / distribution of an advertisement and made available to the Commission upon request.

### **Notices to scheme participants**

7.11 ~~40.10~~—Notification to scheme participants must be made in the language(s) in which the scheme is offered to investors~~them~~ in respect of any changes or proposed changes to the principal brochures~~scheme~~, the offering document or constitutive documents as determined by the Commission pursuant to ~~40.1A~~7.2.

7.12 ~~40.11~~—Subject to ~~40.57.6~~ and ~~40.67.7~~ above, notices to scheme participants need not be approved by the Commission prior to issuance but are required to be filed with the



Commission within ~~two weeks~~one week from the date of issuance of the notice. The Commission, however, retains its power to require the applicant company to submit draft notices for review where the Commission considers it appropriate. For the avoidance of doubt, matters relating to ~~40-47.1~~ above should be approved by the Commission prior to the distribution of the relevant notices to scheme participants.

7.13 ~~40-42~~The applicant company has the responsibility to ensure that the notices to scheme participants are not misleading and contain accurate and adequate information to keep them informed. All notices should contain a Hong Kong contact number for ~~investors~~scheme participants to make enquiries.

*Note: Notices should not include any reference to a specific date or timetable in respect of the changes made to the principal brochure or constitutive documents where such date or timetable has not been agreed in advance with the Commission.*

### **Reporting to the Commission and the Insurance Authority**

7.14 The Authorized Insurer should promptly report to the Commission and the Insurance Authority immediately any material breach, infringement of or non-compliance with the Handbook (including this ILAS Code).

### **Mention of SFC authorization**

7.15 ~~40-43~~Where a scheme is described as having been authorized by the Commission, it must be stated that authorization does not imply official recommendation- by adding a prominent note in the following terms to the offering document and advertisements and other invitations to invest in ~~the~~ a scheme:

SFC authorization is not a recommendation or endorsement of a scheme nor does it guarantee the commercial merits of a scheme or its performance. It does not mean the scheme is suitable for all investors nor is it an endorsement of its suitability for any particular investor or class of investors.



## Appendix A

### Information to be disclosed in the principal brochure

The principal brochure, preferably in one single document, should contain the information necessary for prospective scheme participants to be able to make an informed judgment of the scheme and in particular should contain the following:

(a) ~~(a)~~—Name and type of scheme

The name and description of the scheme must not be misleading to potential scheme participants and should be an accurate reflection of the type of scheme and its objectives.

(b) ~~(b)~~—Parties involved

The names and registered address of all parties involved in the operation of the scheme with a brief description of the applicant company.

(c) ~~(c)~~—Investment returns

(i) ~~Details of how the investment return of the scheme is determined.~~

(ii) ~~Details of how the investment return of the scheme is determined.~~—Except where the scheme's investment returns are subject to a non-variable guarantee, a warning should be stated to the effect that investment involves risks.

(iii) ~~A statement to the effect that the unit(s) allocated to the policy is notional and is solely for the purpose determining the value of the policy shall be included.~~

\* See Chapter 76 for additional disclosure requirements for Guaranteed Funds~~guaranteed~~ and with profits or similar features.

If the nature of the investment policy so dictates, a warning should be given that investment in the scheme or fund investment option linked to a scheme is subject to abnormal risks, together with a description of the risks involved.

(d) ~~(d)~~—Fees and charges





Explanations of fees and charges may be abbreviated, but should be clearly identified to include:

- (i) the level of all fees and charges payable by a scheme participant, including all charges levied on subscription, redemption and switching;
- (ii) the level of all fees and charges payable by the scheme or ~~a fund~~ an investment option linked to the scheme; and
- (iii) details of whether charges are subject to change and the relevant notice period.

A summary of all fees and charges in tabular form should be provided to give scheme participants an overview of the fees structure at a glance. Where complex calculations are required to disclose fees and charges, illustrative examples should be given for clarity.

(e) ~~(e)~~—Investment objectives and restrictions

Summary of investment objective of the scheme or ~~fund~~ investment option(s) linked to a scheme, including, where applicable:

- (i) the types of intended investments, and their relative proportions in the portfolio;
- (ii) the geographical distribution of the intended investments;
- (iii) the investment and borrowing restrictions; and
- (iv) if the nature of the investment policy so dictates, a warning that investment in the scheme is subject to abnormal risks, and a description of the risks involved.

Where the return of an investment option is determined with reference to one or more SFC-authorized funds, a statement as to how to make available offering documents of such SFC-authorized fund(s) shall be included.

For other cases, the specific investments, and associated risks are required to be disclosed, e.g. the use of financial derivative instrument, or leverage (if any) and a statement that the return of the investment option is calculated with reference to a pool of assets internally managed on a discretionary basis by the Authorized Insurer are required to be disclosed.



(f) ~~(f)~~—Borrowing powers

The circumstances under which the scheme or ~~fund~~investment option(s) linked to a scheme may have outstanding borrowings and the purpose for which and extent to which such outstanding borrowings were or may be incurred.

(g) ~~(g)~~—Summary of provisions in constitutive documents

A summary of the provisions described in paragraphs (d), (f), (g), (h) and (k) of Appendix ~~CB~~ with respect to:

- Valuation of Property and Pricing
- Characteristics of Premiums/Contributions
- Benefits
- Maturity and Early Surrender Values
- Conditions of Termination

(h) ~~(h)~~—Application and surrender procedures

A summary of procedures for application and surrender.

(i) Warning statements

The following warning statements shall be disclosed in the principal brochure, where applicable, in a prominent manner:

- (i) Investment-linked assurance schemes are insurance policies issued by the Authorized Insurer.
- (ii) A scheme participant's investments in an investment-linked assurance scheme are not segregated from the assets of the Authorized Insurer offering such scheme. Such investments are therefore subject to the credit and insolvency risks of such Authorized Insurer.
- (iii) A scheme participant is not investing in the underlying funds/assets and does not have any rights or ownership over these underlying funds/assets. The



premiums paid by a scheme participant towards the insurance policy will become part of the assets of the Authorized Insurer. A scheme participant does not have any rights or ownership over any of those assets. The recourse of a scheme participant is against the Authorized Insurer only.

(iv) A scheme participant's return on investments is calculated or determined by the Authorized Insurer with reference to the performance of the underlying funds\*/assets.

(v) Where the return of the scheme is based on investment options linked to the scheme which is calculated or determined by the Authorized Insurer with reference to the performance of a corresponding SFC-authorized fund, a warning statement that the return of investments under the scheme shall be subject to the charges of the scheme and may be lower than the return of the corresponding SFC-authorized fund must be included.

(vi) Early surrender or withdrawal of the policy/suspension of or reduction in premium may result in a significant loss of principal and/or bonuses awarded. Poor performance of underlying funds\*/assets may further magnify the scheme participant's investment losses, while all charges are still deductible.

(v)(vii) The investment options available under the scheme can have very different features and risk profiles. Some may be of high risk.

Other warning statements as required by this ILAS Code must be prominently displayed in the offering document.

(i) (i) — Cooling-off period

A summary of the provisions described in 6.115.12 and 6.125.13 with respect to the cooling-off period.

---

\* "Underlying fund(s)" can be used by an Authorized Insurer in the event that it has disclosed in the offering document that it will be investing the net premium received from the scheme participants into the funds corresponding to the investment options as selected by the scheme participants for such Authorized Insurer's asset liability management. Otherwise, the Authorized Insurer should adopt the term "reference fund(s)".



(k) General information

- (i) A list of constitutive documents and an address in Hong Kong where they can be inspected free of charge or purchased at a reasonable price.
- (ii) A statement that the Authorized Insurer accepts full responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the offering document and confirm, having made all reasonable enquiries, that to the best of their knowledge and belief there are no other facts the omission of which would make any statement misleading.
- (iii) A statement that the Commission does not take any responsibility for the contents of the offering document, makes no representation as to its accuracy or completeness, expressly disclaims any liability whatsoever for any loss howsoever arising from or in reliance upon the whole or any part of the contents of the offering document.
- (iv) Where a scheme is described as having been authorized by the SFC, the prominent note as required under paragraph 7.15 should be disclosed.
- (v) If available, website address of the scheme which contains publication of its offering document, principal brochures, circulars, notices, announcements, financial reports and the latest available offer and redemption prices or net asset value.

(l) ~~(j)~~—Governing law

The governing law of the scheme should be disclosed and an acknowledgment that the parties involved have the right to bring legal action in a Hong Kong court as well as in any court elsewhere which has a relevant connection with the scheme.

(m) ~~(k)~~—Taxation

Where the likely tax benefits to be enjoyed by scheme participants are described, the principal brochure should also briefly explain the applicant company's understanding of the tax implications for Hong Kong scheme participants, based on expert advice received by the applicant company.

Scheme participants should also be advised to seek professional advice regarding their own particular tax circumstances.



(n) ~~(l)~~—Date of publication of the principal brochure

All facts and figures in the principal brochure should be as reasonably up to date as possible.

~~(m)~~—~~*Responsibility Statement*~~

~~A statement that the applicant company accepts responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the brochure.~~

(o) ~~(n)~~—Authorization statement

Where a scheme is described as having been authorized by the Commission, it must be stated that authorization does not imply official recommendation.



## [Appendix B]

### [Information to be disclosed in the Illustration Document]

[To be set out in the Commission's website to facilitate future updates]

(deleted)



## Appendix ~~C~~ B

### Contents of the constitutive documents

The constitutive documents should incorporate the detailed terms and conditions of the scheme. The paragraphs which follow illustrate the details which the Commission will look for although it is prepared to be flexible in determining which criteria should apply.

(a) Name and type of scheme

(b) Parties involved

A statement to specify the parties involved including, as applicable, the applicant company, the management company, the guarantor, the trustee and the auditor, giving full particulars of their functions, duties and obligations.

(c) Investment returns

A detailed description of how the investment returns of the scheme is determined, for example, with reference to:

- (i) ~~a fund~~ an investment option or ~~funds-of-fits~~ assets held in the name of the policy issuer;
- (ii) any notional fund (with its basis stated); or
- (iii) a rate determined at the discretion of the policy issuer.

(d) Valuation of property and pricing

- (i) For schemes linked to unitized funds investment options;
  - the method of determining the value of the assets and liabilities of the property of the scheme;
  - the method of calculating the issue and redemption prices;
  - how frequently prices are established;
  - the lead times for the allocation of premiums to units and the realization of units; and



- the circumstances under which the above might change; or
- (ii) For schemes linked to fund investment options which are not unitized;
  - how and when the fund investment option is valued;
  - how and when the investment return is calculated and distributed amongst the scheme participants; and
  - the circumstances under which the above might change.
- (e) Guarantee

Whether investment performance or capital is guaranteed and if so details of:

  - (i) the rate or amount guaranteed;
  - (ii) the conditions under which the rate or amount may be altered or discontinued;
  - (iii) the nature of the guarantee, e.g. a capital income, flat guarantee, year on year, or compounded;
  - (iv) how and when the guarantee is invoked or revoked;
  - (v) any charges or consideration for the guarantee;
  - (vi) the date of expiry of the guarantee;
  - (vii) if the guarantor is an entity other than the policy issuer, the provisions for appointment, retirement or removal;
  - (viii) where applicable, the methods of determining the discretionary benefits to be paid to scheme participants in excess of the guaranteed amount; and
  - (ix) where applicable, the extent to which, and the basis on which, the policy issuer may set up a reserve, by whatever name called, so as to smooth the progression of unit prices or rates of return.
- (f) Premiums and contributions
  - (i) The full amount to be paid.





- (ii) The currency of payment.
- (iii) To whom and where paid.
- (iv) How paid and the options if any for payment.
- (v) The frequency, due dates and for what periods premiums must be paid.
- (vi) If there are fixed due dates, the grace period and penalties if any for late payment.
- (vii) The proportion or amount of the premiums paid which will be applied for investment purposes and if these proportions change as the scheme progresses, the stages at which these changes occur and the manner in which they change.
- (viii) The consequences and options if any should payment of premiums be discontinued at any time.

(g) Benefits

The currency, dates and places of payment of benefits.

(h) Maturity and early surrender value

- (i) The maturity value.
- (ii) The methods of calculation of full surrender value, partial surrender value and death benefit.
- (iii) Any notice periods for full or partial surrenders.
- (iv) Other settlement options or rights.
- (v) The circumstances under which payment of benefits may be deferred or suspended.
- (vi) The maximum interval between the receipt of a properly documented request for surrender and the date of payment.



(vii) Whether interest is payable in respect of the period between the effective date of claim and the date of payment.

(i) Fees and charges

(i) All specific fees and charges under the scheme whether calculated by way of an amount, percentage or otherwise.

(ii) All indeterminable fees and charges.

(iii) Information as to when and on what event the fees and charges will fall due.

(iv) Any taxes and expenses charged to the scheme or levied against fundinvestment option(s) linked to the scheme on a basis deemed fair and reasonable by an actuary or other person of professional standing.

(v) Any fees payable to, as applicable, the applicant company, management company, trustee, guarantor or any other party.

(j) Investment and borrowing restrictions

The restrictions on the investment of the scheme or fundinvestment option(s) linked to a scheme (if any) and borrowing restrictions.

*(Note: The maximum borrowing limit of the scheme or any fundinvestment option linked to a scheme should not exceed 25% of net asset value, inclusive of short-term borrowings to cover redemptions or other special situations.)*

(k) Termination of the scheme

The circumstances in which a class of scheme or a fundan investment option linked to a scheme may be terminated and the relevant notice to be given to scheme participants.

(l) Governing law

The governing law of the scheme must be specified.

(m) Cooling-off period

The detailed provision of a cooling-off period, as in 6-115.12 and 6-12;5.13, within which an investor a scheme participant may withdraw unconditionally, subject to a



market value adjustment, if any.



## **[Appendix D]**

### **[Compliance checklist]**

**[To be set out in the Commission's website to facilitate future updates]**

(deleted)



## **Section IV:**

# **Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products**

**(as marked up against the proposed SIP Code to reflect amendments made  
following the public consultation)**

---



SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION  
證券及期貨事務監察委員會

## Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products

[Date]



# Table of Contents

<b>Part I: General matters</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Application of code and authorization procedures</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Interpretation</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Part II: Authorization requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 3: Issuers and guarantors</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Eligibility of Issuers</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Eligibility of Guarantors</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>General obligations of the Issuer</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Product arrangers</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Appointment and eligibility of Product Arranger</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Obligations and responsibilities of Product Arranger</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 5: Product structure</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>General principles</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Reference assets, obligations and benchmarks for unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Guaranteed structured <u>investment</u> products</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Collateralised structured <u>investment</u> products</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Assets held as collateral</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Measures in relation to collateralised structured <u>investment</u> products</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Other requirements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Chapter 6: Offering documents and advertisements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Offering documents</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Advertisements</b>	<b>[•]</b>
<b>Presentation of offering documents</b>	<b>[•]</b>

---



Part III: Post-authorization requirements	[•]
Chapter 7: Post-sale continuing obligations	[•]
Provision of information	[•]
Market-making <del>and indicative valuations</del>	[•]
Enquiries and communications	[•]
Continuing disclosure obligations	[•]
Additional obligations in the event of failure to continue to meet requirements	[•]
<u>Part IV: Post-sale arrangements - cooling-off period</u>	[•]
<u>Chapter 8: Issuer to provide for cooling-off or unwind     right</u>	[•]
Appendices	
Appendix A: Core requirements	[•]
Appendix B: Requirements for trustees/custodians appointed in relation to unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products	[•]
Appendix C: Information to be disclosed in offering documents for unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products	[•]
Appendix D: Advertising guidelines applicable to unlisted structured <u>investment</u> products	[•]

---





## Explanatory Notes

1. The Securities and Futures Commission is empowered under ~~Part IV section 105~~ of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (the “SFO”) to authorize the issue of offering documents and advertisements for structured products, and, following enactment of legislative amendments currently proposed (“the enactment date”), to authorize structured products under the SFO. ~~By virtue of section 105(1) of the SFO,~~ the authorization under the SFO may be granted subject to such conditions as the Commission considers appropriate. This Code establishes guidelines for the authorization under the SFO of unlisted structured investment products (from the enactment date), and the issue of offering documents and advertisements for unlisted structured investment products offered to the public in Hong Kong.
  2. This Code forms part of the SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds, Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and Unlisted Structured Investment Products (the “Handbook”).
  3. The Commission will normally have regard to the Handbook, including the high-level principles set out in Part I of the Handbook, in considering authorization applications and whether for unlisted structured investment products (from the enactment date), and the issue of offering documents and advertisements for unlisted structured investment products and, if authorized, whether such authorization should remain ~~authorized~~.
  4. In addition to the high-level principles set out in Part I of the Handbook, this Code contains a series of requirements that are specifically applicable to unlisted structured investment products within the meaning of this Code. Some of these requirements are effectively expansions of the high-level principles and examples of their application and some are more detailed guidelines which are expected to be complied with in connection with the authorization of unlisted structured investment products (from the enactment date), and the issue of offering documents and advertisements for these products.
  5. Although the requirements under this Code are expressed in more detailed language than the high-level principles, they, like the high-level principles, are to be interpreted in a manner that will best ensure the attainment of to achieve their underlying purposes. ~~Accordingly, this Code, through Where~~ the high-level principles, ~~may~~ apply to situations not specifically covered by any requirements in this Code, the requirements of the high-level principles should be observed. ~~Therefore, the spirit of this Code shall be observed as well as its letter and~~ the Commission may only consider granting waivers from strict compliance with specific requirements(s) under this Code in exceptional circumstances. General waivers will not be granted.
  6. The Commission may review its authorization at any time, and may modify, add to or withdraw such authorization as it deems fit in accordance with the SFO.
  7. This Code is not subsidiary legislation.
-



## Part I: General matters

### Chapter 1: Application of code and authorization procedures

#### General application

- 1.1 This Code is made under section 399 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) (the "SFO") and establishes guidelines for authorization of structured investment products (from the enactment date), and the issue of offering documents and advertisements for unlisted structured investment products offered to the public in Hong Kong.
- 1.2 Applications for authorization which seek waivers of any of the requirements in the Code shall give detailed reasons why waivers are sought. The Commission retains the discretion to waive any requirement in this Code or in the Handbook, or to impose such additional requirements as it sees fit in discharging its regulatory objectives.
- 1.3 For the avoidance of doubt, the obligations and responsibilities imposed by the Handbook upon Issuers, Guarantors, Product Arrangers and trustees/custodians are intended for the ultimate benefit of the end investors in the relevant structured investment products and the parties shall discharge such obligations and responsibilities accordingly, notwithstanding any intervening commercial or other arrangements in the packaging and distribution of the relevant structured investment product.

#### Documents to be supplied to the Commission

- 1.4 An applicant for authorization of the issue of an offering document or advertisement for a structured investment product shall submit to the Commission the documents specified in the list available on the Commission's website, such other documents as may be required by the Commission from time to time, and the applicable fee in the form of a cheque payable to the "Securities & Futures Commission".

#### Nomination of an individual as approved person

- 1.5 For purposes of the Commission's approval of an individual pursuant to section 105(2) of the SFO, such individual shall:-
  - (a) be a director of the Issuer, or a director of any Guarantor, or the Responsible Officer or, where applicable, an Executive Officer of a Product Arranger;
  - (b) be licensed or registered in Hong Kong in respect of Type 1 and/or Type 4 regulated activities;
  - (c) have his/her ordinary residence in Hong Kong; and
  - (d) comply with such other requirements as the Commission may impose.



## Chapter 2: Interpretation

~~**Unless otherwise defined in this Code, terms and expressions used in this Code are as defined in the SFO.**~~

- 2.1 ~~Unless otherwise defined in this Code, terms and expressions used in this Code are as defined in the SFO. For the purposes of this Code:—“Advertising Guidelines” means the Advertising Guidelines Applicable to Unlisted Structured Products in Appendix D to this Code.~~
- (a) ~~“Advertising Guidelines” (《廣告宣傳指引》) means the Advertising Guidelines Applicable to Unlisted Structured Investment Products in Appendix D to this Code.~~
- 2-2(b) ~~“Collateral” (抵押品) has the meaning ascribed to it in 5.12.~~
- 2-3(c) ~~“Code” (守則) means this Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products, including its appendices.~~
- 2-4(d) ~~“Commission” or “SFC” (證監會) means the Securities and Futures Commission referred to in section 3(1) of the SFO.~~
- 2-5(e) ~~“Constitutive documents” (組成文件) of an entity means the principal documents governing the formation of that an entity, and includes all material agreements by which that an entity is bound.~~
- 2-6(f) ~~“Guarantor” (保證人), in respect of a structured investment product, means an entity which satisfies the requirements in 3.4 and provides a guarantee in accordance with 5.9 and 5.10 of this Code.~~
- 2-7(g) ~~“Handbook” (《手冊》) means the SFC Handbook for Unit Trusts and Mutual Funds, Investment-Linked Assurance Schemes and Unlisted Structured Investment Products, of which this Code forms part.~~
- 2-8(h) ~~“HKMA” (金管局) means the Hong Kong Monetary Authority.~~
- 2-9(i) ~~“Issuer” (發行人) means the issuer of a structured investment product which is the subject of an application for authorization pursuant to this Code.~~
- 2-10(j) ~~“Key Product Counterparty” (主要產品對手) has the meaning ascribed to it in 5.5.~~
- 2-11(k) ~~“Offering document” (銷售文件) means an offering document for distribution in Hong Kong, which, pursuant to this Code, should contain containing the information required by Appendix C to this Code, and any other information necessary for investors to make an informed judgment about the structured investment product.~~
- 2-12(l) ~~“Product Arranger” (產品安排人), in respect of a structured investment product, means an entity appointed pursuant to 4.1.~~



2.13(m) “Programme” (計劃) means a structured investment product issuance programme set up by an Issuer for the periodic issuance of structured investment products.

2.14(n) “Product KFS Key Facts Statement” (產品資料概要) means the product key facts statement required pursuant to 6.3.

2.15(o) “Reference assets” (參考資產) has the meaning ascribed to it in 5.7.

2.16(p) “Regulated Entity” (受規管實體) means an entity which is:-

- (a)(i) a bank licensed to carry on banking business pursuant to the Banking Ordinance (Cap. 155, Laws of Hong Kong) and is regulated by the HKMA; or
- (b)(ii) a corporation licensed by the Commission pursuant to section 116 of the SFO; or
- (c)(iii) an overseas banking entity which is subject to equivalent regulatory oversight to that of Hong Kong and is acceptable to the Commission.

(q) ~~2.17~~ “Structured investment products” (結構性投資產品) includes a structured investment product (regardless of the legal form that it may take):-

- (i) which, or the issue of any advertisement, invitation or document in respect of which, requires the Commission’s authorization pursuant to Part IV of the SFO, and
- (ii) which involves derivative arrangements and is commonly regarded in the market as an equity, index, commodity or credit-linked investment product.

~~2.1~~

*Note: At the time of publication of this draft Code for consultation purposes, there are proposals to amend the SFO and the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong). These proposals are still under consideration and are expected to be the subject of a separate public consultation later this year. The proposed amendments include a definition of “structured products”. The definition of “structured products” adopted for this Code will be based upon that proposed for the legislative amendments, and will contemplate the types of structured products commonly seen to date in the retail market in Hong Kong. Please see the discussion in the “structured products” section of the consultation paper.]*

2.2(r) “Trade date” (交易日) in respect of an investment made by an investor in a structured investment product, means the date upon which the final terms of the structured investment product purchased or subscribed for by that investor are determined or any relevant initial pricing recorded, whichever is later.



2.32.2 Where the context so permits or requires, words importing the singular number include the plural and vice versa and words importing the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter genders and vice versa.



## Part II: Authorization requirements

### Chapter 3: Issuers and guarantors

#### Eligibility of Issuers

- 3.1 An Issuer shall satisfy the requirements in this Chapter at the time of issue of the structured investment product and for the period during which any of the Issuer's obligations to investors under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product remain outstanding.
- 3.2 An Issuer shall satisfy the following requirements:-
- (a) it shall be duly incorporated in Hong Kong or duly incorporated or otherwise established under the laws of a jurisdiction acceptable to the Commission;
  - (b) it shall be in compliance with the laws of the place in which it is incorporated or established and its constitutive documents; and
  - (c) the laws of the place in which it is incorporated or established and its constitutive documents shall permit the issuance and offering of the structured investment product to the investing public in Hong Kong and shall not be inconsistent with the applicable requirements of the Handbook.

*Notes: (1) The Commission may request evidence of compliance with these requirements by such means as it considers appropriate, including provision of a legal opinion.*

*(2) In considering whether a particular jurisdiction is acceptable for purposes of these requirements, the Commission ~~will~~may have regard to factors which include the following:-*

- (a) whether there would be any legal impediment to any enforcement action against the Issuer taken by or on behalf of any investor in Hong Kong, or to the enforcement of any judgment or award granted by a Hong Kong court;*
- (b) whether applicable laws protecting the interests of investors and creditors, corporate governance standards and anti-money laundering obligations are equivalent to those applicable to companies incorporated in Hong Kong; and*
- (c) whether the jurisdiction imposes any foreign ownership restrictions which might adversely affect investors' acquisition or divestiture of the structured investment product, or foreign exchange or other restrictions which might affect the ability of the Issuer to perform its obligations in respect of, or the settlement or clearance of transactions in respect of, the structured investment product.*



3.3 An Issuer shall meet the eligibility requirements in either (a) or (b) below ~~both~~ at the time of issue of the structured investment product ~~and for~~. Without limiting the generality of the other provisions in this Code, any failure to meet any such eligibility requirement at any time during the period during in which ~~any of~~ the Issuer's obligations ~~to investors~~ under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product remain outstanding:- will be construed as an ongoing disclosure obligation under 7.6(c) of this Code.

- (a) ~~#The Issuer~~ shall be an entity which:-
- (i) meets the core requirements set out in Appendix A to this Code; and
  - (ii) ~~is in good standing and in particular, it~~ is not the subject of any disciplinary proceeding in respect of its licence or registration to conduct any regulated activity, ~~is not or~~ subject to any action by an exchange, regulated market or self-regulatory organisation for breach of any applicable rules, ~~and has never been convicted of any offence under applicable securities or corporate laws or other laws involving fraud or dishonesty which may materially affect its financial condition, status as a licensed or regulated entity, or ability to perform its licensed or regulated activity.~~

*Note: The Commission may require the Issuer to confirm its meeting the core requirements and to provide to the Commission its own records of any past disciplinary action or proceedings taken against it in Hong Kong or elsewhere and such other matters which may reasonably affect its good standing eligibility to act as ~~the an~~ Issuer.*

- (b) ~~where~~Where the Issuer does not meet the requirements in 3.3(a), the Commission may consider an application for authorization of the issue of an offering document or advertisement for a structured investment product made by such an Issuer in the following circumstances:-
- (i) where the Issuer does not meet the requirements in 3.3(a), and the structured investment product is not collateralised in accordance with 3.3(b)(ii):-
    - (A) the Issuer must have its obligations under the terms of the structured investment product guaranteed in compliance with 5.9 and 5.10 by a Guarantor; and
    - (B) the Guarantor shall meet the requirements set out in 3.4.

*Note: The Commission normally expects the Guarantor in such a case to be part of the corporate group to which the Issuer belongs.*

- (ii) where the Issuer does not meet the requirements in 3.3(a), and the Issuer does not have its obligations under the terms of the structured investment product guaranteed in accordance with 3.3(b)(i):-
  - (A) the Issuer shall be a special purpose vehicle:-



- (I) which is established for the sole and exclusive purpose of, and has its permitted activities limited to, issuing the structured investment product, or one or more series of structured investment products, and functions wholly incidental to that activity;
  - (II) which is subject to restrictions preventing a transfer of its ownership or control if this would in any way prejudice the interests of investors in the structured investment product or the structure of the structured investment product;
  - (III) which has no encumbrances on its share capital or ownership interests other than in favour of the investors in the structured investment products it has issued;
  - (IV) which has no other borrowings, indebtedness in the nature of borrowings, loan capital outstanding or created but unissued (including term loans), guarantee obligations or material contingent liabilities, save for structured investment products it has issued under the relevant Programme;
  - (V) which maintains proper accounts and records;
  - (VI) which has independent, professional directors or trustees; and
  - (VII) which is insulated from liabilities of third parties or the corporate group sponsoring its establishment, protected from dissolution risk and has appropriate restrictions on its filing of a bankruptcy or winding-up petition or taking any other insolvency action; and
- (B) the structured investment product shall be collateralised in compliance with the applicable requirements in 5.12 to 5.22.

### Eligibility of Guarantors

3.4 The Guarantor shall satisfy the following requirements at the time of the issue of the structured investment product ~~and for so long as~~. Without limiting the generality of the other provisions in this Code, any failure to meet any such eligibility requirement at any time during the period in which the Issuer's obligations ~~to investors in under the terms and conditions of~~ the structured investment product or the Guarantor's obligations under the terms and conditions of the guarantee remain outstanding ~~:- will be construed as an ongoing disclosure obligation under 7.6(c) of this Code.~~

(a) ~~—#~~ The Guarantor shall comply with 3.2 and 3.3(a) as if it were the Issuer; ~~and~~

*Note:* The Commission may require the Guarantor to ~~confirm~~ provide its own records ~~s~~ of any past disciplinary action or proceedings taken against it





in Hong Kong or elsewhere and such other matters which may reasonably affect its good-standingeligibility to act as the Guarantor.

and

- (b) the laws of the place in which it is incorporated or established and the Guarantor's constitutive documents shall permit the Guarantor to enter into the guarantee and shall not be inconsistent with the applicable requirements of the Handbook.

Note: The Commission may request evidence of compliance with these requirements by such means as it considers appropriate, including provision of a legal opinion.

### General obligations of the Issuer

3.5 In addition to any other obligations under the terms and conditions of the relevant structured investment product, the Issuer:-

- (a) shall ensure that it complies, and that the structured investment product complies, with the applicable provisions of the Handbook;
- (b) is responsible for the contents of, and the completeness and accuracy of the information contained in, any advertisement, invitation or other document issued by it in respect of the structured investment product;
- (c) shall ensure that it complies, and that the structured investment product complies, with all applicable laws and rules and, in addition, any codes or guidelines issued by governmental departments, regulatory bodies or any other organisations regarding its activities or its administration both at the time of issue of the structured investment product and for the period during which any of the Issuer's or, where applicable, a Guarantor's obligations to investors under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product remain outstanding;
- (d) shall ensure that the proceeds of the issue of the structured investment product are applied as set out in the offering document in respect of that structured investment product;
- (e) shall make and maintain arrangements to facilitate timely dissemination to investors in the structured investment product of any information required to be disclosed to them under 7.6 or 7.7;
- (f) shall at all times comply with its obligations under the terms of the structured investment product, the applicable requirements in the Handbook and its regulatory obligations, and shall have implemented and shall maintain appropriate systems, controls, procedures and policies, including, without limitation, in relation to risk management, independent valuation of the structured investment product or of any collateral and, where applicable, collateral administration, to ensure such compliance;

Note: By "independent" valuation of the structured investment product or of any collateral the Commission expects a clear segregation of functions.



and when a party assumes different responsibilities in relation to the structured investment product, a clear segregation of functions within the organisation.

- (g) shall exercise ~~due~~reasonable care and diligence in any appointment and selection of any ~~intermediaries~~distributors of a structured investment product; and
- (h) shall ensure that there is sufficient monitoring of the structured investment product to enable compliance with its obligations in Chapter 7.

3.6 In addition, in the case of an Issuer within the scope of 3.3(b)(ii), the Issuer shall implement sufficient arrangements to preserve its organisation and structure, discharge its administrative and operational obligations and ensure that it is able to fulfil its obligations under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product and to comply with all applicable requirements in the Handbook.

3.7 An Issuer shall provide information and undertakings to the Commission in such form as the Commission may require from time to time.



## Chapter 4: Product arrangers

### Appointment and eligibility of Product Arranger

- 4.1 An Issuer ~~within of the scope of 3.3~~type in (a) or (b)(ii) below shall appoint a Product Arranger ~~or Product Arrangers~~ in respect of the structured investment product, ~~to discharge who shall comply with the responsibilities set out~~applicable requirements in this ~~Chapter~~Code for so long as any of the Issuer's obligations to investors under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product remain outstanding:-

~~*[Note: The requirement to appoint a Product Arranger is currently being considered, additionally, for situations where neither the Issuer nor, where applicable, the Guarantor is a licensed corporation or a registered institution under the SFO. Please refer to discussion in, and Question (5)(c) of, Section 1 of Part II of the consultation paper.]*~~

- (a) ~~the Issuer is within the scope of 3.3(b)(ii); or~~
- (b) ~~the Issuer, and (in the case of a guaranteed structured investment product) the Guarantor, is not:-~~
- (i) ~~a bank licensed to carry on banking business pursuant to the Banking Ordinance and is regulated by the HKMA; or~~
- (ii) ~~a corporation licensed by the Commission pursuant to section 116 of the SFO.~~

- 4.2 A Product Arranger shall meet the eligibility requirements below. Without limiting the generality of the other provisions in this Code, any failure to meet any such eligibility requirement at any time during the period in which the Issuer's obligations under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product remain outstanding will be construed as an ongoing disclosure obligation under 7.6(c) of this Code. The Product Arranger shall:-

- (a) at the time of issue of the structured investment product and for so long as the Issuer's obligations to investors in the structured investment product remain outstanding, be licensed or registered in Hong Kong for Type 1 and Type 4 regulated activities;

~~*Note: Without limiting the generality of 4.2(a) and without prejudice to any obligation of the Product Arranger in connection with other activities, the Commission expects a Product Arranger to be appropriately licensed or registered to conduct the relevant regulated activities in connection with its role as such a Product Arranger in respect of the structured investment product.*~~

- (a) ~~and~~
- (b) at the time of issue of the structured investment product, not be the subject of any disciplinary proceedings in respect of its licence or registration to conduct any regulated activity, not be or subject to any action by an exchange, regulated market or self-regulatory organisation for breach of any applicable



rules, which may materially affect its financial condition, status as a licensed or regulated entity, or ability to perform its licensed or regulated activity.

~~(i) be the subject of any disciplinary proceedings in respect of its licence or registration to conduct any regulated activity;~~

~~(ii) be, or have been, the subject of any sanction under the SFO for breach of any provision of the SFO or any of the codes or guidelines made under the SFO;~~

~~—be subject to any action by an exchange, regulated market or self-regulatory organis~~

~~(iii) action for breach of any applicable rules; or~~

~~(iv) have been convicted of any offence under applicable securities or corporate laws or other laws involving fraud or dishonesty.~~

*Note: The Commission may require a Product Arranger to ~~confirm~~ provide its own records of any past disciplinary action or proceedings taken against it in Hong Kong or elsewhere and such other matters which may reasonably affect its good standing eligibility and its competence to act as the Product Arranger.*

4.3 Where an Issuer appoints more than one Product Arranger in respect of a structured investment product, one of the Product Arrangers shall be designated as the primary channel of communication with the Commission, and the Commission shall be informed accordingly. All Product Arrangers will nevertheless remain severally responsible for complying with applicable requirements set out in the Handbook.

### **Obligations and responsibilities of Product Arranger**

4.4 Without limiting the Issuer's obligations and responsibilities, each Product Arranger shall ensure that the Issuer at all times complies with the applicable requirements in the Handbook. For the avoidance of doubt, a Product Arranger shall not, by virtue of this provision, be liable for the financial obligations of the Issuer or the Guarantor (if applicable) under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product.

4.5 A Product Arranger shall at all times comply with the applicable requirements in the Handbook and its regulatory obligations, and shall have implemented and shall maintain appropriate systems, controls, procedures and policies, including, without limitation, in relation to risk management, independent valuation of the structured investment product or of any collateral and, where applicable, collateral administration, to ensure such compliance.

*Note: By "independent" valuation of the structured investment product or of any collateral the Commission expects a clear segregation of functions, and when a party assumes different responsibilities in relation to the structured investment product, a clear segregation of functions within the organisation.*

4.6 A Product Arranger shall provide information and undertakings to the Commission in such form as the Commission may require from time to time.



## Chapter 5: Product structure

### General principles

- 5.1 The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall ~~satisfy itself and confirm to the Commission~~ be satisfied that a structured investment product is designed fairly and is appropriate for the market(s) for which it is intended.
- 5.2 The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger should be independent of any Key Product Counterparty.
- 5.3 The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall avoid situations where conflicts of interest may arise including any actual or potential conflicts that may arise between different parties involved in respect of the structured investment product. Where such a conflict cannot be avoided, and provided that investors' interests can be sufficiently protected, the conflict shall be managed and minimised by appropriate measures, and the actual or potential conflicts and these measures shall be disclosed in the offering documents.
- ~~5.4~~ (a) The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall exercise ~~due~~ reasonable care and diligence in selecting and (for the Issuer) appointing parties:-
- ~~(i)~~ (i) ~~who undertake one or more roles or services in respect of a structured investment product;~~
  - ~~(ii)~~ (ii) ~~or who are or will be counterparties to material agreements in respect of the structured investment product; or~~
  - ~~(iii)~~ (iii) ~~or to whose credit risk the Issuer or investors in the structured investment product may be exposed.~~
- ~~5.4(b)~~ (b) Without limiting the generality of ~~5.4(a), the foregoing,~~ the Issuer and, where applicable, ~~such each~~ Product Arranger shall give due consideration to the following matters:-
- ~~(a)(i)~~ (a)(i) ~~such parties the parties referred to in 5.4(a)(i), (ii) and (iii),~~ shall meet any applicable eligibility requirements (including, in the case of a trustee or a custodian, the specific requirements set out in Appendix B to this Code) and shall have the necessary experience, competence and resources to perform such roles and/or services; and
  - ~~(b)(ii)~~ (b)(ii) ~~in selecting such parties the parties referred to in 5.4(a)(i), (ii) and (iii),~~ the Issuer and, where applicable, such Product Arranger shall have regard to all relevant factors, including the degree of regulatory oversight to which such parties are subject, their locations and any possible conflict of laws risks, the legality, validity and enforceability of the governing agreements and arrangements, the parties' risk management practices, their financial resources and creditworthiness and, where applicable, the degree of counterparty exposure and concentration risk in or of the structured investment product and the implications of these factors for investors in the structured investment product.



*Note: In the case of a trustee/custodian, the Issuer and such Product Arranger shall ensure that the trust deed or custodial agreement does not contain any term that may operate to undermine any applicable provision in the Handbook.*

5.5 Where a structured investment product is designed such that the Issuer's payment obligations to investors or the investors' economic return from the structured investment product depend(s) or will depend wholly or substantially upon payments made or to be made pursuant to an agreement or arrangement, for example a swap or forward arrangement, between the Issuer and another party, and where such party's creditworthiness may have an impact on the risk and return of the structured investment product (such party, ~~together with and~~ any party guaranteeing or providing credit support for such party's obligations, collectively referred to as a "Key Product Counterparty"), ~~for example a swap or forward arrangement~~, the Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall ensure that any such transaction is entered into at a fair market value and on the best available terms and that the Key Product Counterparty is selected in an objective manner with regard to the requirements in 5.4.

5.6 The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall ensure that any agreement between it and one or more of the parties referred to in 5.4(a)(i), (ii) and (iii) and any Key Product Counterparties ~~parties~~ described in ~~5.4 or~~ 5.5, any guarantee provided pursuant to Chapters 3 and 5, and any arrangements with trustees/custodians provide for the parties to submit, at a minimum, to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of Hong Kong.

*Note: In general, the Commission expects such agreements, guarantees and arrangements to be governed by Hong Kong law. Where the same are not governed by Hong Kong law, the Issuer should explain in the offering document the implications to investors of this choice of law. See Appendix C for details.*

### **Reference assets, obligations and benchmarks for unlisted structured investment products**

5.7 The reference entities, assets, obligations and/or benchmarks (collectively, "reference assets") to which a structured investment product is linked shall be acceptable to the Commission.

*Note: In considering whether reference assets are acceptable, the Commission will generally take into account factors which include the following:-*

*(1) where structured investment products are linked to equity securities, indices or funds, the Commission will have regard to the reference assets eligible from time to time as reference assets for structured products listed on The Stock Exchange of Hong Kong Limited;*

*(2) whether sufficient information is available to the public, or will be made available to investors, in English and Chinese, in respect of the reference assets;*

*(3) in the case of a structured investment product linked to an index, the name of the publisher of the index, how it is compiled, its computation,*



the frequency with which it is updated and published, and the circumstances in which it could be modified or discontinued;

(4) in the case of a basket or baskets of reference assets, the number of reference assets and their relative weightings; and

(5) the extent to which any reference asset, or its price, value or performance or any other relevant attribute is or might be controlled or influenced by one party or a group of parties.

5.8 The Issuer shall ensure that reference assets for a structured investment product meet the following requirements:-

- (a) information on the reference assets, their performance and/or value and any other attribute of such reference assets relevant to determining the Issuer's obligations under the terms and conditions of the structured investment product shall be transparent and regularly available to investors free of charge; **and**

*Note: Where the information in relation to a reference asset such as Hang Seng Index is readily available in both English and Chinese and easily accessible to the investing public in Hong Kong free of charge, the Issuers and Product Arrangers may, instead of providing the same information to investors, inform investors of the source(s) and means to access such information.*

and

- (b) the basis upon which the value or return of the structured investment product is linked to each such reference asset, including relative weightings and other formulae, the circumstances in which any change might be made to these, and any basis upon which any such reference asset may be replaced or substituted shall be transparent and objective.

~~*Note: In considering whether reference assets are acceptable, the Commission will generally take into account the following factors:-*~~

~~(1) where structured products are linked to equity securities, indices or funds, the Commission will have regard to the reference assets eligible from time to time as reference assets for structured products listed on The Stock Exchange of Hong Kong Limited;~~

~~(2) whether sufficient information is available to the public, or will be made available to investors, in English and Chinese, in respect of the reference assets;~~

~~(3) in the case of a structured product linked to an index, the name of the publisher of the index, how it is compiled, its computation, the frequency with which it is updated and published, and the circumstances in which it could be modified or discontinued;~~

~~(4) in the case of a basket or baskets of reference assets, the number of reference assets (which shall be reasonable in light~~



~~of the product strategy or objective and the intended target market) and their relative weightings; and~~

~~(5) the extent to which any reference asset, or its price, value or performance or any other relevant attribute is or might be controlled or influenced by one party or a group of parties.~~

### **Guaranteed structured investment products**

- 5.9 For purposes of 3.3(b)(i), the terms of the guarantee shall:-
- (a) inure for the benefit of all of the investors in the structured investment product; and
  - (b) provide for the Guarantor to be unconditionally and irrevocably liable, as primary obligor, for the due and punctual performance of all obligations of the Issuer to investors arising under and in accordance with the terms and conditions of the structured investment product, including to the extent that such terms and conditions may be varied or waived.
- 5.10 The guarantee shall be issued by the Guarantor in conformity with the laws of the place in which the Guarantor is incorporated or otherwise established, it shall be issued in conformity with the Guarantor's constitutive documents, and all authorizations needed for its issue under such laws or documents shall have been duly given.
- 5.11 The Issuer and/or the Guarantor shall provide to the Commission legal opinions in relation to the guarantee from competent legal counsel qualified to practise in the relevant jurisdiction(s) as to the following matters:-
- (a) confirming that the guarantee constitutes legal, valid and binding obligations of the Guarantor and is enforceable in accordance with its terms;
  - (b) confirming that the guarantee will not be adversely affected by waiver or variance of the terms of the structured investment product, by the invalidity or unenforceability of the Issuer's obligations or by events such as bankruptcy, reorganisation, merger or transfers affecting the Issuer, and excludes any right of set-off on the part of the Guarantor;
  - (c) opining on whether there are any circumstances in which the guarantee may be invalidated, voided, vitiated or terminated or in which the Guarantor may be afforded relief from its obligations thereunder;
  - (d) confirming that the guarantee meets the requirements in 5.9 and 5.10; and
  - (e) addressing such other matters as the Commission may require.

### **Collateralised structured investment products**

- 5.12 Where any of the Issuer's obligations to investors under the terms and conditions of a structured investment product are, or will be, secured by an asset or a pool of assets ("collateral"), 5.13 through 5.20 apply.





## Assets held as collateral

5.13 Where a structured investment product is collateralised in order to provide credit support or to secure (whether wholly or partially) relevant financial obligations in connection with that structured investment product, the collateral shall meet the following criteria:-~~The Issuer shall ensure that collateral held as security for the Issuer's obligations to investors in respect of a structured product satisfies the following requirements:-~~

- (a) the collateral shall be in cash or shall be liquid and tradable;
- (b) there shall be an active secondary market for the relevant assets comprising the collateral, with trading carried out by a number of dealers, and trading prices in such market shall be continuously available;
- (c) the collateral shall have a credit rating which is one of the top three investment grades awarded by at least one rating agency of international standing and reputation which is acceptable to the Commission;
- (d) the collateral shall not include:-
  - (i) structured products whose payouts primarily rely on embedded derivatives or synthetic instruments; or
  - (ii) securities issued by special purpose vehicles, special investment vehicles or similar entities;
- (e) the issuer of any such collateral shall normally not be related to the Issuer or any Product Arranger in respect of the structured investment product which the collateral supports or any party who is or will be a Key Product Counterparty;

Note: Where the Issuer considers that it is appropriate to use collateral issued by a related party to the Issuer, the Product Arranger or the Key Product Counterparty, the Issuer should disclose this in the offering documents and the fact, with reasons in support, that it is satisfied that investors' interest is not thereby prejudiced. The Issuer must also explain their relationship, and how a default by any of the parties may affect the collateral.

- (f) the collateral shall be acquired at the best available price in the market and on an arms-length basis;
- (g) the collateral shall be fully-funded;
- (h) the collateral shall be selected in reliance on objective benchmarks and considerations, ~~solely for the purpose of securing the interests of investors,~~ and shall not be used primarily to enhance the return on the structured investment product;
- (i) the tenor of the assets comprising the collateral shall generally match that of the structured investment product the collateral supports;
- (j) where appropriate, the collateral shall be ~~appropriately~~ diversified;



~~(j) Note: Where the Issuer considers that there is no need to diversify, the Issuer should disclose this in the offering documents and the fact, with reasons in support, that it is satisfied that investors' interest is not thereby prejudiced.~~

~~(k) the collateral shall not subject investors to any undue risks; and~~

~~(k) the risk and return characteristics of the collateral, including any concentration risk, and their implications for investors shall be able to be explained in a way that an investor in the target market could reasonably be expected to understand; and~~

~~(l) the collateral shall be capable of being enforced in a timely and efficient manner.~~

~~5.14 The collateral shall be marked to market daily. The Issuer shall ensure that such valuation is verifiable and independently conducted on the basis of a reliable up-to-date market value of each relevant asset according to established valuation policies consistently applied and disclosed in the offering document.~~

~~5.155.14~~ In structuring the structured investment product and selecting the collateral, the Issuer shall use best efforts to ensure that, in the absence of a default or early termination, the value of the collateral as of the date the structured investment product matures or expires will be at least equal to the notional amount of the issue.

~~Note: The Commission expects that Issuers should establish and maintain sufficient internal measures, including, where appropriate, valuation of the collateral by functionally independent means.~~

### **Measures in relation to collateralised structured investment products**

~~5.16 The Issuer of a collateralised structured product shall ensure that the investor's security interests in the collateral are capable of being enforced in a timely and efficient manner and the realised proceeds are applied to meet any outstanding obligations of the Issuer to investors in the structured product.~~

~~5.175.15~~ At a minimum, the Issuer shall ensure that the following requirements are met at all times from the date of issue of the structured investment product until such time as the Issuer's obligations to investors in the structured investment product are fully discharged:-

(a) the collateral shall be clearly identified, properly segregated and ring-fenced for the benefit of the investors in respect of each series or tranche of the relevant structured investment product from all other series or tranches issued by the same Issuer, and held in safe custody by a trustee/custodian which meets the requirements in Appendix B to this Code;



Notes: (1) *The Commission generally expects that there will be no power on the part of the trustee/custodian or any Key Product Counterparty to direct the trustee/custodian to substitute collateral.*

(2) *Without prejudice to any obligations or duties imposed on the trustee/ custodian under the applicable laws, the Commission generally expects that the Issuer will ensure that any trust deed/custodial agreement imposes an obligation on the trustee/custodian to use its best efforts to take such steps and action as the circumstances may require to enforce the rights and interests in relation to the collateral held by it on behalf of the investors.*

(b) the collateral shall be free from prior encumbrances, save for any interest(s) granted in favour of investors, and shall not be used or dealt with by any of the Issuer, any Product Arranger and the trustee/custodian in contravention of the Handbook or in any other way that would prejudice the interests of the investors;

~~(c) investors' claims to the proceeds of the collateral shall always rank in priority to all other claims, save for fees and costs of administrators or liquidators and other payments which are given priority under applicable law, or reasonable fees and costs of receivers, trustees or custodians as provided for in the relevant document. In each case, details of the payment priority must be set out in the offering document; and~~

Notes: Although not a Code requirement, Issuers should consider the structural needs in designing a product and where appropriate, the Commission encourages Issuers to accord first priority to investors' claims to the proceeds of realization of the collateral.

and

~~(c)~~ the Issuer shall make all necessary arrangements to eliminate or mitigate any risks that would impede or prevent efficient and timely realisation of the proceeds of the collateral for the benefit of investors, including conflict of laws or cross-border insolvency issues.

Notes: (1) *The Issuer shall explain in the offering document how the arrangements mentioned in ~~5.17(d)~~5.15(c) may serve such purposes, and any limitations.*

(2) *For the avoidance of doubt, the Issuer shall give the highest regard to the protection of investors' interests in designing a structured investment product.*

5.185.16 The Issuer shall provide to the Commission legal opinions from competent legal advisers qualified to practise in the relevant jurisdictions, opining as to the legally binding nature, validity and enforceability of any interest created or proposed to be created, any proposed trust or custodial arrangements under ~~5.175~~ and such other matters as the Commission may require, for example relating to the nature and location



of the collateral and applicable laws governing the creation, perfection, maintenance and enforceability of the collateral.

~~5.195.17~~ The Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall be satisfied, ~~and provide a confirmation to the Commission thereof,~~ that the collateralisation of the structured investment product adequately protects the interests of investors in the structured investment product.

### Other requirements

~~5.205.18~~ Subject to 5.19, the Issuer shall identify in the offering document in respect of the structured investment product all relevant details of the assets comprising or to comprise the collateral, including, where applicable, details of specific asset types, issuers, tenors, market segment, historical performance, ratings, valuations and any secondary markets, and the proportion in value of the total collateral pool each such asset type represents or will represent at the time the collateral is acquired.

~~5.215.19~~ Where the collateral has not been identified or acquired as of the date of issue of the offering document, or where the Issuer cannot legally provide all details required by ~~5.2018~~ as of the date of the offering document, the Issuer shall:-

- (a) identify in the offering document the relevant types of assets comprising, or to comprise, the collateral, provide details of market segment, historical performance, ratings, valuations and secondary market activity, to the extent applicable, of proxy collateral similar to the intended collateral and disclose the proportion in value of the total collateral pool each such type represents or will represent at the time the collateral is acquired; and
- (b) provide the remaining details required by ~~5.2018~~ to investors by the business day in Hong Kong following the acquisition of the collateral pursuant to ~~5.2220~~.

~~5.225.20~~ The Issuer shall ensure that relevant collateral is acquired and all rights and security interests in such collateral created ~~for the benefit of investors in connection with the structured investment product~~ at the latest by the end of the first business day in Hong Kong after the relevant trade date in respect of the structured investment product. The Issuer shall ensure that such security rights and interests are perfected as soon as practicable.



## Chapter 6: Offering documents and advertisements

### Offering documents

- 6.1 An offering document shall:-
- (a) be issued by the Issuer of the relevant structured investment product;
  - (b) contain the information necessary for investors to be able to make an informed judgment of the investment which is the subject matter of the authorization; and
  - (c) without prejudice to any of the above, contain details with respect to all of the applicable items of disclosure listed in Appendix C to this Code.
- 6.2 Where structured investment products are issued under a Programme, the offering document in respect of a particular structured investment product issue may consist of more than one document which, when read together as a whole, comprise the offering document for that issue and comply with the requirements in the Handbook and applicable regulatory requirements.
- Notes: (1) The number of documents comprising an offering document shall be reasonable.*
- (2) *The Issuer shall ensure that the overall presentation of the invitation or offer in this way could not reasonably be expected to confuse or mislead investors or otherwise impede an investor's understanding of the risks and nature of the structured investment product.*
  - (3) *The Issuer shall be prudent and reasonable in deciding upon how the information required to be included in the offering document for a structured investment product is presented. Notwithstanding that the Issuer may consider it necessary for the offering document in respect of a structured investment product to comprise more than one document, it should ensure that the information is presented in as simple and straightforward a format as possible.*
- 6.3 Every offering document must contain a Product ~~KFS~~Key Facts Statement. Such statement shall form a part of the offering document and shall contain ~~sufficient~~ information to enable investors to comprehend the key features and risks of the relevant structured investment product.
- Note: An illustrative template of a Product ~~KFS~~Key Facts Statement will be made available on the Commission's website.*
- 6.4 An offering document (or any document referred to in 6.2 constituting part of the offering document) may only be amended by:-
- (a) a supplemental or subsequent offering document (or document constituting part of the offering document); or
  - (b) replacing that offering document (or document constituting part of the offering document) with a new offering document or document, as applicable.



- 6.5 In granting authorization for the issue of an offering document, the Commission will normally impose a validity period being the first anniversary of the date of publication of the offering document (and where multiple documents are used, the first document constituting the offering document).
- 6.6 If, at any time after the issue of the offering document and before the commencement of dealings in the structured investment product, the Issuer becomes aware that:-
- (a) there has been a significant change affecting any matter contained in the offering document; or
  - (b) a significant new matter has arisen, the inclusion of information in respect of which would have been required in such offering document if it had arisen before such offering document was issued,

the Issuer (unless the Commission agrees otherwise) shall, as soon as practicable, issue a supplement to its offering document including details of any such change or new matter, provided that such supplement shall remain subject to prior review and authorization by the Commission under section 105(1) of the SFO. For this purpose “significant” means significant for the purpose of making an informed judgment of the proposed investment as required under 6.1.

### **Advertisements**

- 6.7 Advertisements in respect of structured investment products shall be submitted for authorization prior to their issue or publication to the public in Hong Kong. The criteria for authorization are set out in the Advertising Guidelines. The Commission may review its authorization at any time, and may modify, add to or withdraw such authorization as it deems fit, in accordance with the SFO.

### **Presentation of offering documents**

- 6.8 Offering documents shall be issued in the English and Chinese languages.

~~6.9 The English and Chinese versions of any offering document carry equal weight.~~



## Part III: Post-authorization requirements

### Chapter 7: Post-sale continuing obligations

#### Provision of information

- 7.1 The Issuer shall make available to investors in a timely manner any information, notice or document that it is required to provide to them pursuant to the Handbook or under applicable law or regulations.

*Note:* In addition to provision of information through intermediaries/distributors, Issuers should ~~also~~ consider also making information available by means of their own websites as a matter of best practice.

- 7.2 The Issuer shall ensure that all material documents in relation to the structured investment product (including without limitation any guarantee, Programme agreement(s), trust deed, custodial agreement and documents creating and evidencing interests in collateral or credit enhancement arrangements, and all arrangements with Key Product Counterparties and parties undertaking roles or providing services in respect of the structured investment product which are material to investors' interests in the structured investment product) are made available in Hong Kong for inspection by investors, free of charge at all times during normal office hours at the place of business of the Issuer or any Product Arranger, and ensure that copies of such documents are available upon request by any investor upon the payment of a reasonable fee.

#### Market-making ~~and indicative valuations~~

- ~~7.3~~ (a) The Issuer shall ~~make firm price quotations~~ provide market-making in respect of the structured investment product at least bi-weekly on a committed basis, and for this purpose, make indicative bid prices for the structured investment product available to investors, ~~at least weekly~~, either itself or through its designated market agent. ~~Such quotations~~

~~(b)~~ Indicative bid prices shall be fair and reasonable. They made available throughout each market-making day, although they may be subject to intra-day changes.

~~(c)~~ On each market-making day, based on the indicative bid prices, the Issuer shall, or shall procure its market agent to, provide a firm (actual) bid price in good faith and buy back the structured investment product on the same market-making day, subject to acceptance of the firm (actual) bid price by the investor.

~~(d)~~ The minimum market-making size shall be the minimum denomination of the structured investment product.

- ~~7.4~~ An Issuer will not be required to comply with the ~~foregoing requirement~~ requirements in 7.3:-

~~7.3(a)~~ in the case of a structured investment product with a scheduled tenor of ~~one calendar month~~ six months or less (in the absence of early termination or default) as stated in the relevant offering document. ~~:-~~



~~7.4(b) The Issuer shall make available to investors daily, either itself or through its designated market agent, an indicative valuation of the structured product. Such indicative valuation shall be determined in good faith, on an independent basis, and shall be fair and reasonable. Where there is a material fluctuation in the indicative valuation of the structured product, the Issuer should provide a timely and effective explanation to investors. where there is market disruption or suspension of trading of the reference asset(s).~~

### Enquiries and communications

7.5 An Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall put in place arrangements promptly to address any enquiries or other communications concerning a structured investment product throughout the period during which any of the Issuer's obligations to investors in respect of the structured investment product remain outstanding.

### Continuing disclosure obligations

7.6 An Issuer shall comply with the following requirements throughout the period during which any of its obligations to investors in respect of the structured investment product remain outstanding:-

- (a) where an Issuer is required under the Handbook or any law to include in its offering document its annual report and audited financial statements, or those of a Guarantor or a Key Product Counterparty, the Issuer shall ~~deliver to the Commission and~~ make available to investors:-
- (i) as soon as practicable after the date of their publication but, in any event, not later than four months after the date to which they relate, the annual report and audited financial statements in respect of the Issuer, the Guarantor and/or the Key Product Counterparty, as applicable, and, where group accounts are prepared, the relevant group accounts, together with the auditor's report thereon;
  - (ii) as soon as practicable after the date of its publication or preparation but, in any event, not later than four months after the period to which it relates, any interim financial report in respect of the Issuer, the Guarantor and/or the Key Product Counterparty, as applicable;
  - (iii) where published, as soon as practicable after the date of its publication, any current financial report in respect of the Issuer, the Guarantor and/or the Key Product Counterparty, as applicable; and
  - (iv) as soon as practicable after the date of their publication, full details of any other financial information which the Issuer, and (where applicable) the Guarantor and/or the Key Product Counterparty may provide to any other securities or financial regulator, stock exchange or market as filings made as a matter of public record;

Note: (1) ~~The reports, and accounts or other documents~~ required to be provided in 7.6(a)(i) and (ii) above shall be in both the English and Chinese languages, provided that an Issuer / Guarantor / Key Product Counterparty who is not otherwise required by any





law, code or regulation to publish financial statements in both Chinese and English may make available the reports and accounts in full in one language – either in Chinese or English. The version in the other language may be made available in the form of a summary.

- (2) The above requirements are directed at ensuring that investors who have already invested in the structured investment product will be kept informed about the Issuer's, and where applicable, the Guarantor's and any Key Product Counterparties' financial status. Without being limited by the foregoing requirements, as soon as any of the financial information required by (i) to (iv) above is published or becomes available, the Commission considers it best practice for the Issuer to:—, on an ongoing basis. It is possible that financial information falling within 7.6(a)(iii) or (iv) of the Code may also trigger a disclosure obligation under 7.6(c). That it is a matter for the Issuer to determine.
- ~~(a) prepare and issue a supplemental— (3) For the avoidance of doubt, the Issuer is reminded that, where it intends to continue offering document containing such financial information; and~~
- ~~(b) suspend any further issuance or offering of the structured investment product products to the public prior to authorization of the issue of, it needs to comply with the supplemental offering document by requirements in the Commission pursuant to the SFO and the Handbook Code (in particular Appendix C) with regard to disclosure of financial information in offering documents.~~
- (b) ~~The the~~ Issuer shall keep the Commission and all investors in the structured investment product informed as soon as reasonably practicable ~~of any material adverse change in the financial condition or business of~~ the Issuer or the Guarantor ~~or their respective corporate groups which could reasonably (as the case may be expected) ceases to be material to investors' interests in meet any of the structured product, including, without limitation:— core requirements in Appendix A:~~
- ~~(i) where the net asset value of the Issuer, or, where applicable, a Guarantor falls below the levels required by this Code; and~~
- ~~(ii) where the credit rating of the Issuer or, where applicable, a Guarantor falls below the levels required by this Code;~~
- (c) to the extent permitted by applicable law, the Issuer shall notify the Commission and all investors in the structured investment product of changes in the financial condition or other circumstances which could reasonably be expected to have a material ~~negative~~adverse effect on the ability of the Issuer or, if applicable, the Guarantor or a Key Product Counterparty, to fulfil its commitments in respect of connection with the structured investment product;



- (d) the Issuer shall notify the Commission and all investors in the structured investment product:
- (i) where applicable, of any event of default in respect of the collateral, or failure of a material portion of the collateral to continue to meet any of the requirements in 5.13 and, to the extent it is able to do so, explain the reasons for such failure; and
  - (ii) to the extent it is aware or ought to be aware after reasonable enquiry, of any breach of the requirements in Appendix B to this Code by a trustee/custodian appointed in respect of the structured investment product; and
- (e) the Issuer shall notify the Commission and all investors in the structured investment product as soon as reasonably practicable of any termination or resignation of any Product Arranger or any trustee/custodian appointed in respect of the structured investment product and, in such case, their replacement and the reasons for such termination, resignation and replacement.

*Note: The notifications to investors to be made under 7.6(b) to (e) shall be in both the English and Chinese languages.*

- 7.7 An Issuer and, where applicable, a Product Arranger shall respond promptly to any enquiries made of it by the Commission concerning a structured investment product by giving such relevant information as is available to the Issuer or the Product Arranger, as applicable, or, if appropriate by making the information available to all investors in the structured investment product.

#### **Additional obligations in the event of failure to continue to meet requirements**

- 7.8 Where, after the authorization of the issue of an offering document or advertisement, the relevant structured investment product or any party in respect of the structured investment product fails to continue to meet applicable requirements under the Handbook, and without prejudice to any powers, rights or remedies on the part of any person as a result thereof, the Issuer and, where applicable, each Product Arranger shall:-
- (a) cease to advertise, invite offers or subscriptions for, or offer the structured investment product to the public in Hong Kong;
  - (b) inform the Commission immediately; and
  - (c) take remedial action to rectify the situation as soon as possible ~~and, where appropriate, provide compensation to investors to ensure that investors are not disadvantaged because of such failure.~~



## **Part IV: Post-sale arrangements - cooling-off period**

### **Chapter 8: Issuer to provide for cooling-off or unwind right**

- 8.1 Subject to the provisions in this Chapter 8, in respect of any unlisted structured investment product to which this Code applies, the Issuer shall confer on investors a cooling-off or unwind right in respect of the structured investment product purchased or subscribed for, whereby investors may cancel their orders, sell the product back to the Issuer or its agent, or otherwise unwind the transaction, and receive a refund or payment calculated in accordance with 8.4.
- 8.2 An Issuer need not comply with 8.1 in the case of a structured investment product with a scheduled tenor of one year or less (in the absence of early termination or default).
- 8.3 The right to be conferred on investors under 8.1 shall be exercisable for a period of at least five business days in Hong Kong after the investor places an order for a relevant structured investment product. Any exercise of the right should be irrevocable. The right should only be exercisable by a relevant investor: (a) in respect of the whole (and not part) of the order; (b) when the investor has not sold or otherwise transferred the structured investment product, and (c) when the structured investment product is still subsisting and not yet expired or otherwise terminated.
- 8.4 Subject to 8.5, any refund or payment to an investor upon exercise of the right under 8.1 shall be equivalent to:-
- the principal amount,
- less* (if applicable) a market value adjustment (including break costs attributable to the unwind or cancellation), any handling fee (provided that the handling fee (at both Issuer and intermediary levels) shall be reasonable, fixed or ascertainable and disclosed in advance, and shall not contain any profit margin for the Issuer or intermediary),
- plus* a refund of sales charges/commissions.
- 8.5 In any event, the amount required to be refunded or paid upon exercise of the right under 8.1 will be capped at the principal amount (plus the sales charges/commissions, if not already subsumed in the principal amount).
- 8.6 The Issuer shall put in place arrangements to ensure that the refund or payment is provided to investors as promptly as practicable after exercise of the right by the investor.



## Appendix A

### Core requirements

1. For purposes of this Code, in order to satisfy the core requirements, an entity shall:-
  - (a) have a net asset value (i.e. the aggregate of share capital and reserves) of not less than HK\$2 billion as set out in its latest published audited financial statements and interim financial report; ~~and~~
  - (b) either:-
    - (i) be a Regulated Entity; or
    - (ii) have a credit rating which is one of the top three investment grades awarded by at least one rating agency of international standing and reputation which is acceptable to the Commission; ~~and~~

*Notes: A credit rating which is presently of such grade but which is under review for possible downgrading to less than such grade will not be regarded as fulfilling this requirement.*

and, in either case:-

- (c) not:-
  - (i) be the subject of any proceeding, petition, application or resolution for winding-up or dissolution, or for bankruptcy administration or any other similar relief or analogous proceedings under any applicable law;
  - (ii) be, or be deemed under any applicable law to be, insolvent or unable to pay its debts as and when they become due;
  - (iii) have entered into any restructuring, rescheduling, or settlement arrangement with any creditor which resulted in a compromise or waiver of any indebtedness;
  - (iv) have had any moratorium declared or instituted in respect of its general unsecured indebtedness;
  - (v) have made any general assignment, arrangement or composition with or for the benefit of its creditors;
  - (vi) have had any secured creditor or receiver take possession of; or have had any legal process levied or enforced against, all or substantially all of its assets; or
  - (vii) have had any receiver, administrator or similar officer appointed in respect of the entity or its assets.

*Note: The Commission may require the relevant party to confirm and substantiate its status in this regard.*



## Appendix B

### Requirements for trustees/custodians appointed in relation to unlisted structured investment products

1. A trustee/custodian appointed in relation to an unlisted structured investment product shall be:-
  - (a) a bank licensed under section 16 of the Banking Ordinance; or
  - (b) a trust company which is a subsidiary of ~~such~~ a bank referred to in 1(a); or
  - (c) a banking institution incorporated or established outside Hong Kong and subject to equivalent regulatory oversight acceptable to the Commission.
2. A trustee/custodian appointed in relation to an unlisted structured investment product shall be independently audited and shall have minimum issued and paid-up capital and non-distributable capital reserves of HK\$10 million or its equivalent in foreign currency.
3. A trustee/custodian appointed in relation to an unlisted structured investment product ~~shall be in good standing and~~ shall not:-
  - (a) be the subject of any proceeding, petition, application or resolution for winding-up or dissolution, or for bankruptcy administration or any other similar relief or analogous proceedings under any applicable law;
  - (b) be, or be deemed under any applicable law to be, insolvent or unable to pay its debts as and when they become due;
  - (c) have entered into any restructuring, rescheduling, or settlement arrangement with any creditor which resulted in a compromise or waiver of any indebtedness;
  - (d) have had any moratorium declared or instituted in respect of its general unsecured indebtedness;
  - (e) have made any general assignment, arrangement or composition with or for the benefit of its creditors;
  - (f) have had any secured creditor or receiver take possession of; or have had any legal process levied or enforced against, all or substantially all of its assets; or
  - (g) have had any receiver, administrator or similar officer appointed in respect of the trustee/custodian or any of its assets.
4. A trustee/custodian shall be independent of the Issuer, the Guarantor, any Product Arranger and any Key Product Counterparty in respect of the relevant structured investment product.



## Appendix C

### Information to be disclosed in offering documents for unlisted structured investment products

This list is not intended to be exhaustive. The Issuer shall at all times bear in mind the overarching principle laid down in 6.1(b), namely, that an offering document shall contain the information necessary for investors to be able to make an informed judgment of the investment which is the subject matter of the authorization.

*Note: A stand-alone offering document in relation to a structured investment product should contain all the information required by the Code, including this Appendix. Where multiple documents are used which together constitute the offering document for a particular structured investment product, they should, between them, contain all the information required by the Code and each such document shall contain the statements required pursuant to ~~€~~33 and ~~€~~34 of this Appendix C.*

#### The Issuer and other key parties

1. The names, registered addresses, date and place of incorporation or establishment, regulatory status, key responsibilities and the basis upon which any eligibility requirements, where applicable, are satisfied for each of the parties involved in the structured investment product, and their relationships with each other. Normally the following parties (where applicable) shall be included:-
  - (a) the Issuer;
  - (b) the Product Arranger(s);
  - (c) the Guarantor;
  - (d) any Key Product Counterparty; and
  - (e) the trustee(s)/custodian(s).

*Notes: (1) The offering document shall disclose the following additional information for the Issuer, each Product Arranger, where applicable, and any Guarantor:-*

- (a) *names, descriptions and addresses for service of process of its directors; and*
  - (b) *the ownership structure.*
- (2) *Information regarding the relationships between various parties in respect of the structured investment product and their respective roles should include without limitation:-*
  - (a) *information on any relationship or affiliation between the Issuer, the Guarantor (where applicable), each Product Arranger (where applicable), any Key Product Counterparty or trustee/custodian (where applicable), or confirmation*



*that such party is not related to or affiliated with any other such party;*

- (b) details of the role of each of the above entities stated in Note (1) above (other than the Issuer itself) and a brief description of how each of them (other than the Issuer itself) is and/or will be compensated for that role; and*
  - (c) a diagram or chart showing the relationships between the Issuer, any Key Product Counterparty, the Guarantor, any trustee/custodian and each Product Arranger, as applicable, and between these parties and the investors, as well as the flow of funds, should be provided if practicable.*
- (3) The basis upon which any Key Product Counterparty was selected should be disclosed.*
- (4) In the case of special purpose vehicle Issuers, the disclosure must include details of arrangements made under 3.6 of this Code for the performance of the Issuer's obligations and compliance with the requirements of the Code.*

## **The structured investment product**

2. (a) The nature and amount of the issue including the total issue size, if applicable. Where the offer is under a Programme, a description of the Programme, the types of structured investment products that can be offered under the Programme, the total Programme size and (where applicable) minimum and maximum tenors permitted for structured investment products under the terms of the Programme.
- (b) A description of the structured investment product's strategy and investment objective(s).
- (c) Details, in clear and simple language, of how the product strategy and investment objective(s) are intended to be achieved, including an explanation of all material assumptions.
- (d) The structure and features of the structured investment product.
- (e) Where the Issuer is a special purpose vehicle, an explanation of the reasons for using such structure.
- (f) The key components of the structure and any embedded derivatives.
- (g) Whether the structured investment product is principal-protected and if so, to what extent, and details of how principal protection will be achieved.
- (h) The terms and conditions of the structured investment product. Where the terms and conditions stipulate a governing law which is not Hong Kong law, a prominent warning of the fact, as well as an explanation of the relevant issues relating to conflicts of laws, enforceability or recognition of judgments and their implications for investors.



- (i) A description of the way in which the payouts or deliveries that are expected to be made to investors will be determined.
- (j) Details of the effect of market disruptions and/or extraordinary events affecting the one or more of the reference assets.
- (k) A description of the events of default and circumstances in which the structured investment product may be terminated prior to its scheduled maturity or expiry.
- (l) The rights of investors in the event of a termination prior to scheduled maturity or expiry under (k) above, and in the event of a default or the bankruptcy or insolvency or a similar event affecting any of the Issuer, the Guarantor, a Key Product Counterparty or a trustee/custodian, how these rights can be enforced and any risks or limitations affecting such rights.
- (m) The rights of the Issuer vis-à-vis each Key Product Counterparty, any trustee/custodian and, if applicable, any Guarantor in the event of a default by such party or the bankruptcy or insolvency of such party or a similar event affecting such party.
- (n) The parties to whom investors have recourse in respect of the structured investment product and an explanation of any risks or limitations affecting investors' recourse.
- (o) Where applicable, details of any "cooling-off" or "unwind" right provided to investors, including without limitation, the time period during which the right is exercisable and the mechanism for such exercise, an explanation of the basis for determination of the amount of the payment to which an investor would be entitled, including the amount of any fee, how any applicable market value adjustment will be calculated and the nature of any break or unwind cost that is likely to be deducted from a payment due to an investor upon exercise of the right, and the expected mode and timing of settlement.

### The offer

- 3. (a) Details of the terms of the offer of the structured investment product, including (if known) the offer period, the issue date ~~(if known)~~ and the offer price.
- (b) Distribution details for the structured investment product.
- (c) The minimum denomination of the structured investment product, and, if applicable, the minimum investment amount.
- (d) ~~Fees~~ Whether any fees, charges and commissions would be payable by investors, in a generic manner.
- (e) The scheduled tenor (or minimum or maximum tenor) (in the absence of early termination or default) of the structured investment product being offered.
- (f) Any restriction on transferability of the structured investment product and any arrangement for settlements of transfers.





## Payments and settlements

4. (a) Details of when and how payments or delivery of assets will be made to investors.
  - (b) An explanation of the mechanism for settlement upon termination, maturity or expiry of the product, including any requirement that investors provide notice of election or exercise, or other conditions or requirements imposed on investors in relation to settlement, any right on the part of either the Issuer or investors to elect for cash or physical settlement, and any additional costs payable by investors.
5. If applicable, circumstances in which any payment or delivery of assets may be delayed, provisions made to manage the risk of any disruption, and whether and to what extent the Issuer or any other party will compensate investors in the event of late payment or delivery.

## Product ~~KFS~~Key Facts Statement

6. A Product ~~KFS~~Key Facts Statement conforming with the requirements in, and containing the information required by, this Code.

## Scenario analyses

7. Scenario analyses showing a balanced picture of the potential payout to investors and stating applicable assumptions. Normally the worst case and best case scenarios must be presented by way of easy-to-understand graphical, diagrammatical or pictorial illustrations among these examples.

## Risk disclosures

8. A list of risk factors as well as the measures (if any) taken to mitigate any such risks, of which disclosure is necessary for investors to be able to make an informed judgment of the investment in the structured investment product. In each case the offering document needs to explain how these risks may affect an investment in the structured investment product and the implications of such risks for investors. Where practicable, the risks should be quantified, and should include a statement setting out the maximum loss which may be sustained by investors.

## Information on the reference assets, obligations and benchmarks for unlisted structured investment products

9. A description of the assets, obligations and/or benchmarks to which the structured investment product is linked, and an explanation (in easily understandable terms) of the basis upon which the value or return of the structured investment product is linked to each such asset, obligation or benchmark, including relative weightings and other formulae, the circumstances in which any change might be made to such weightings and formulae, and any basis upon which any such asset, obligation or benchmark may be replaced or substituted.
10. In the case of structured investment products linked to equity securities of a company or companies, the offering document shall include the following information in respect of each of the relevant companies:-



- (a) in the case of a company listed on The Stock Exchange of Hong Kong Limited (the “Exchange”), an indication of where information on that company including its published audited consolidated financial statements and interim financial statements may be obtained;
- (b) in the case of ~~any other company~~ a company which is not listed on the Exchange, an indication of where information on that company including its published audited consolidated financial statements and interim financial statements may be obtained;
- (c) in the case of a company which is not listed on the Exchange:-
  - (i) a description of the principal activities of the company and its subsidiaries;
  - (ii) details of its issued share capital and substantial shareholders’ interests;
  - (iii) where its shares are listed on another exchange or regulated market, a statement of that fact, and a description of that exchange or market regarding its rules on trading, settlement and disclosure requirements;
  - (iv) market statistics covering at least the price of the securities at the latest most practicable date, the market capitalisation, the historic price/earnings multiple and dividend yield and a brief trading history of the securities for a period of ~~least 5 but not more than 6 years or a period equal to the maximum tenor of the structured product, whichever is the longer, in each case~~ 5 years to the latest practicable date before the issue of the offering document. In cases where reference assets have been listed for less than 5 years, such history should be given since the date of listing;
  - (v) details of where updated information regarding the securities/company may be obtained; and
  - (vi) any other information concerning the company which has been published and which is necessary to enable an investor to make an informed judgment of the structured investment products;
- (d) where applicable, the date of and arrangements for any adjustments to take account of any rights issue, bonus issue, sub-division, consolidation or other alteration to the share capital of any such company; and
- (e) the rights (if any) of the holders of the structured investment products in the event of the bankruptcy, insolvency or liquidation of any such company.

11. In the case of structured investment products linked to an index or indices, for each index:-

- (a) a description of the index;
- (b) a description of the constituent components and their relative weightings;



- (c) the identity of the party/ies who sponsor and calculate the index;
  - (d) a description of the method of calculation of the index;
  - (e) the historic highs and lows for the last five years;
  - (f) the closing spot level at the latest most practicable date;
  - (g) where investors may obtain information on the index; and
  - (h) such additional information as the Commission may require.
12. In the case of a structured investment product linked to any other reference assets, the offering document must contain information with respect to those other reference assets which is necessary to enable an investor to make an informed judgment of the investment in the structured investment product.

### **Historical performance of reference assets**

13. Offering documents may only contain information on the historical performance of the reference assets to which a structured investment product is linked if the information is relevant and conducive to investors' understanding of the structured investment product.

*Note: Where the reference assets are listed securities and if historical share price information is set out in an offering document advertisement, the period covered shall be at least 5 but not more than 65 years, or a period equal to the maximum tenor of the structured product, whichever is the longer latest practicable date, save for cases where the reference assets have been listed for less than 5 years, in which case the period should be from the date of listing.*

14. All performance information, including awards and rankings, shall be referenced to the relevant sources and dated. Rankings and awards may be quoted from any recognised, published independent source. For peer group comparisons, only one source shall be used and a clear description of the peer group shall be included.
15. No forecast of the structured investment product's performance may be presented.
16. Where provided, information on past performance of a reference asset shall be up to the latest practicable date before the issue of the offering document, and will normally be expected to be no more than 7 days old.

### **Examples and presentation**

17. Hypothetical examples are permitted for the purpose of explaining how the structured investment product works. Any such examples must be fair, balanced and commercially realistic. They must also include the worst-case scenario. They must be accompanied by a statement to the effect that the examples used are for illustrative purposes only and that the actual performance of the product may differ from the examples shown.
18. An offering document may only include an annualised rate of expected return or potential return of a structured investment product if:
- (a) all the assumptions underpinning the calculation are stated;



- (b) it is accompanied by a prominent statement that the annualised rate of return is hypothetical and is not the actual return; and
- (c) the ~~expected~~-actual return (or potential return) and the annualised return (or potential return) are presented side by side.

19. If graphs are used, they must be clearly presented without distortion. If different sets of data are plotted on the same graph for comparison purposes, the same axes shall be used. Periods/tenors for comparison shall be consistent.

20. If non-US\$/HK\$-denominated returns are shown, the offering document shall, in addition, either:

- (a) show the same returns in US\$/HK\$ with an explanation of the exchange rate used as the basis for the calculation; or
- (b) include a statement to the effect that “*The investment returns are denominated in [foreign currency]. US/HK dollar-based investors are therefore exposed to fluctuations in the US/HK dollar / [foreign currency] exchange rate.*”

### **Use of proceeds**

21. Details of the intended use of the proceeds of the issue.

### **Conflicts of interest**

22. Any conflicts of interest or potential conflicts of interest that any parties involved may have in respect of the structured investment product and a description of how these conflicts may affect investors and how these conflicts are managed and minimised.

### **Information on the guarantee for guaranteed structured investment products**

23. In the case of a guaranteed structured investment product, the full text of the guarantee should be set out as an appendix to the offering document. The terms of the guarantee should be summarised in the main text of the offering document. This should be accompanied by an explanation, in clear and simple language, of the scope and limitations of the guarantee, including any circumstances in which the guarantee may be invalidated, voided, vitiated or terminated, and the implications for investors. The offering document should include details of the circumstances in which, and how, the guarantee might be enforced against the Guarantor, and by whom. It should explain any relevant issues relating to conflicts of laws or recognition of judgments and their implications for investors, including, without limitation, whether it can be enforced in Hong Kong courts and whether there are any conditions or impediments to enforcement of Hong Kong judgments against the Guarantor.

### **Information on the collateral for collateralised structured investment products**

24. For collateralised structured investment products:-

- (a) the purpose for which the collateral is held;



- ~~(a)(b)~~ the details required pursuant to 5.2018 and 5.2419 of the Code;
- ~~(b)(c)~~ an explanation of how the collateral satisfies each of the requirements in 5.13 of the Code, ~~including, without limitation, a confirmation under 5.13(e) and 5.15;~~
- ~~(c)(d)~~ an explanation of how ring-fencing of the collateral and any proceeds has been or will be achieved for the benefit of investors;
- ~~(e)~~ — how the collateral would be used (for example, whether as credit support or otherwise, and which parties' interests are being secured under such collateral);
- ~~(e)(f)~~ a description of the nature of the interests in the collateral created or granted, or intended to be created or granted, for the benefit of investors, including how they are/will be created and maintained and by whom they are/will be held. Details of the arrangements with, and the duties of, trustees and custodians with respect to the collateral. Details of the duties owed by trustees and custodians of the collateral to the investors, and any restrictions and limitations to which they are subject;
- ~~(e)~~ — ~~details of the basis upon which the collateral will be valued pursuant to 5.14 of the Code and the party performing the valuation;~~
- ~~(g)~~ without limiting 2(l) of this Appendix C above, details of when and how the rights and security interests in the collateral can be enforced and the proceeds realised, by whom and for whose benefit, including implications for investors of any conflict of laws or recognition of judgments issues and any factors arising from the nature and/or location of assets comprising the collateral. The offering document should ~~explain~~include a prominent and upfront explanation (including implications) of the ranking and priority of investors' claims to the proceeds of realisation of the collateral, and where investors do not rank first in priority, a prominent warning of that fact;
- ~~(f)~~ Note: Where relevant, there should be such a warning in the Product KFS, and the offering document should include a waterfall demonstration of the order of priority.
- ~~(g)(h)~~ the policy with respect to selecting and administering collateral;
- ~~(h)(i)~~ the scheduled tenor of each asset comprising the collateral;
- ~~(i)(j)~~ an explanation of how the risks presented by the collateral may affect the overall return of the structured investment product; and
- ~~(j)(k)~~ where the Issuer seeks to rely on 5.2419 of the Code, the reasons for this, the details required by 5.2419(a) of the Code and details of when and how investors will receive the details required to be provided pursuant to 5.2419(b) of the Code.

### Credit ratings

25. Where a credit rating of a structured investment product, the Issuer of such structured investment product, any reference asset or any collateral is given in an offering document, it shall be accompanied by:



- (a) the source of the credit rating, which must be a rating agency of international standing and reputation acceptable to the Commission;
- (b) an explanation of what the credit rating means, including the class and/or type of rating and the specific entity or obligation rated; and
- (c) an appropriate warning to the effect that the credit rating (i) is not a recommendation, (ii) is not necessarily an indication of liquidity or volatility, and (iii) may be downgraded if the credit quality of the relevant entity or asset or obligation declines.

Note: (1) *Where a negative outlook has been assigned, such fact shall be disclosed.*

(2) *Where the structured investment product is not rated, such fact shall be disclosed.*

## Reports and accounts

- 26. The date of the Issuer's and, where applicable, the Guarantor's and each Key Product Counterparty's financial year.
- 27. The names and business addresses of the auditors for any entity whose accounts are required to be provided to investors or included in the offering document pursuant to the Code.
- 28. The Issuer's and, where applicable, the Guarantor's and each Key Product Counterparty's most recently published audited annual report and consolidated financial statements (including the accompanying notes thereto) for the last two financial years, in each case in conformity with the following requirements:-
  - (a) All auditors' reports must be prepared by accountants who have an international name and reputation, and who will usually be required to be qualified under the Professional Accountants Ordinance for appointment as an auditor of a company. In the case of an overseas Issuer, Guarantor or Key Product Counterparty, the Commission may be prepared to accept a firm of accountants which is not qualified under the Professional Accountants Ordinance. Such a firm will usually be expected to have equivalent qualifications and be a member of a recognised body of accountants. The accountants must be independent of the Issuer, any Guarantor, each Product Arranger (where applicable), any trustee/custodian and any Key Product Counterparty.
  - (b) The auditors' report must conform with either:-
    - (i) accounting standards approved by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants and laid down in the Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards issued from time to time by that Institute; ~~or~~
    - (ii) International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS") as promulgated from time to time by the International Accounting Standards Board; or
    - (iii) accounting standards approved by the law, financial regulator or



accounting industry body of the home jurisdiction of the Issuer, the Guarantor or the Key Product Counterparty (as the case may be).

29. (a) For each of the Issuer and, where applicable, the Guarantor and each Key Product Counterparty, where published, or if more than 10 months have elapsed since the end of the financial year to which the most recent audited accounts relate, an interim financial report (the “Interim Report”) covering the first 6 months of its financial year containing the following information:-
- (i) profits or losses before taxation,
  - (ii) taxation on profits,
  - (iii) profits or losses attributable to minority shareholders,
  - (iv) profits or losses attributable to shareholders,
  - (v) the balance at the end of the period of share capital and reserves, and
  - (vi) comparative figures for the matters specified in (i) to (v) inclusive for the corresponding previous period.
- (b) Where the Interim Report does not contain items of information referred to in 29(a) of this Appendix C above, the Issuer and, where applicable, the Guarantor and any Key Product Counterparty must provide a statement in respect of the same period as the Interim Report referred to in 29(a) above which sets out any information specified in that paragraph which is not so included.
- (c) A statement that the Interim Report and, if applicable, any statement made pursuant to 29(b) of this Appendix C above have been prepared in accordance with the Issuer’s and, where applicable, the Guarantor’s or the Key Product Counterparty’s usual accounting policies and procedures.
30. Where published, the Issuer’s and, where applicable, the Guarantor’s and each Key Product Counterparty’s latest quarterly financial report. Where the quarterly report is made up to a date subsequent to the date of the Interim Report above and contains the information required by 29(a) of this Appendix C, the Interim Report may be omitted. The quarterly report may be omitted where it is made up to a date prior to the date of any Interim Report included in accordance with 29(a) above.

### **Material adverse changes and material litigation**

31. A statement of any material adverse change in the financial condition or other circumstances business of the Issuer, the Guarantor or any Key Product Counterparty ~~or of the corporate group of any of the foregoing~~ since the date of the most recent audited accounts for such entity ~~or group~~ included in the offering document, or, where there has been none, an appropriate negative statement.
32. Information on any proceedings or claims, current or threatened, which could have a significant impact on the Issuer, any Guarantor or any Key Product Counterparty, or, where there are none, an appropriate negative statement. Where the offering document for a particular offer consists of more than one document, and particulars of



these matters are provided in an earlier document, the particulars should be updated in each subsequent document forming part of the offering document. Issuers who include unaudited interim or quarterly financial statements in an offering document may peg such statement to the date of the unaudited interim or quarterly financial statement.

### **Warnings/statements/legends to be included**

33. Disclaimer statement:-

“The Commission has authorized the issue of this document under section 105(1) of the Securities and Futures Ordinance. The Commission takes no responsibility for the contents of this document, makes no representation as to its accuracy or completeness and expressly disclaims any liability whatsoever for any loss howsoever arising from or in reliance upon the whole or any part of the contents of this document. The Commission’s authorization does not imply its endorsement or recommendation of the structured investment products referred to in this document.”

34. Statements/warnings in the following form (or to the like effect) shall be prominently displayed in the front of the offering document:-

- (a) “Investors are warned that the value of these structured investment products may fluctuate and holders may sustain a total loss of their investment. Prospective investors should therefore ensure that they understand the nature of the structured investment products and carefully study the risk factors set out in this document and other document comprising the offering document for the structured investment products and, where necessary, seek professional advice, before they invest in the structured investment products.”; ~~and~~

*Notes: (1) The Issuer may modify the above statement to reflect any principal protection features of the structured investment product.*

- (2) The Issuer may replace the words “structured investment products” with the name of the structured investment product provided that the offering document relates solely to that type of structured investment product and the name provides an accurate description of the structured investment product.*

---

and

(b) Responsibility statements:-

“This document includes particulars given in compliance with the Code on Unlisted Structured Investment Products issued by the Securities and Futures Commission for the purpose of giving information with regard to the Issuer [, the Guarantor [and each Product Arranger]]. The Issuer [, the Guarantor [and each Product Arranger] collectively and individually accept[s] full responsibility for the contents of, and the completeness and accuracy of the information contained in this document and confirm[s], having made all reasonable enquiries, that to the best of their knowledge and belief there is no untrue or misleading statement, or other facts the omission of which would make any statement herein untrue or misleading.”;

*Note: Where the issue is guaranteed, the Guarantor should be included.*





*Where the Issuer is a special purpose vehicle within the scope of 3.3(b)(ii), the Product Arranger(s) should be included.*

A statement that the Issuer accepts full responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the offering document and confirm, having made all reasonable enquiries, that to the best of its knowledge and belief there are no other facts the omission of which would make any statement misleading.

Confirmation by the Issuer that the structured investment product complies with, ~~and that the Issuer will ensure that the structured product continues to comply with,~~ the Code.

*Note: In the case of an Issuer which is a special purpose vehicle within the scope of 3.3(b)(ii), the confirmation statement should also be given by each Product Arranger.*

For non-collateralised structured investment products:-

“The structured investment products constitute general unsecured contractual obligations of the Issuer and of no other person. If you purchase the structured investment products, you are relying upon the creditworthiness of the Issuer [and the Guarantor] and have no rights under the terms of the structured investment products against the issuer(s) of the reference assets.”

*Notes: (1) The Issuer may modify the above statement depending on whether the issue is guaranteed.*

*(2) The Issuer may also replace the words “structured investment products” with the name of the structured investment product provided that the offering document relates solely to that type of structured investment product and the name provides an accurate description of the structured investment product.*

- (c) That investing in the structured investment product is not the same as investing in the reference assets;
- (d) That the structured investment product is not covered by the Investor Compensation Fund; and
- (e) Where the name of the structured investment product contains the word “deposit”, that the deposit is a structured investment product which is not a protected deposit, that it is not protected by the Deposit Protection Scheme and that it is not the same as and should not be treated as a substitute for a term deposit.

### **Expert statements**

- 35. Where the offering document includes a statement purporting to be made by an expert,
  - (a) the name, address, professional qualifications of such expert and whether there is any conflict of interests or perceived conflict of interests and, if so, a full description thereof;



- (b) a statement that the expert has given his, her or its consent to the issue of the offering document with the statement included in the form and context in which it is included; and
- (c) the date on which the expert's statement was made and whether or not it was made by the expert for incorporation in the offering document.

### **Taxation**

36. ~~Details~~An overview of Hong Kong and principal taxes levied upon transfer of the structured investment product or exercise of any rights accorded to the Issuer or investors under the terms of the structured investment product, and upon expiry or maturity of the structured investment product, ~~including tax implications for investors.~~

### **Language**

37. For each single language offering document, a prominent and eligible description in the other language on how to obtain an offering document in that other language.

### **Continuing disclosure obligations**

38. A description of the Issuer's continuing disclosure obligations pursuant to this Code and details of how investors will receive or be able to access the relevant information.

### **Market-making ~~and indicative valuations~~**

39. Whether and how investors may dispose of or exit from the structured investment product before termination, maturity or expiry. If applicable, the Issuer should disclose information regarding market-making arrangements, including, without limitation:-

- (a) the identity and regulatory status of the market maker(s);
- (b) the frequency of such market-making;
- (c) the minimum and maximum transaction ~~sizes~~sizes, if any, for each request for liquidity provision; ~~and~~
- ~~(d)~~ where and how investors can obtain or access indicative ~~valuations~~bid prices, and the implications of such prices to investors;
- ~~(e)~~ the mechanisms of market-making, and firm price quotations. ~~logistics with regard to placing orders and settlements; and~~
- ~~(f)~~ Valuations of the a description of the circumstances (including those in 7.4(b) of the Code) in which the Issuer will not be able to provide market-making for the particular structured investment product ~~and~~.

### **Valuation of the structured investment product or any collateral**

40. The details of any valuation ~~policies required by 3.5(f) and, if applicable, 5.14, including, without limitation, valuation methodologies to be used~~policy or methodology in respect of the event of market disruptions or other contingenciesstructured investment product or any collateral.



## Documents available for inspection

41. A list of documents to be made available for inspection and an address in Hong Kong where they can be inspected free of charge or where copies can be purchased at a reasonable price during the period that any part of the structured investment products issue remains outstanding.
42. The list of documents pursuant to 41 of this Appendix C should include, without limitation:-
  - (a) the memorandum and articles of association or equivalent constitutive documents of the Issuer;
  - (b) certified true copies of all reports, letters or other documents, balance sheets, valuations and statements by any expert any part of which is extracted or referred to in the offering document;
  - (c) certified true copies of all offering documents relating to the structured investment product the issue of which is authorized from time to time to the extent that they are current and valid during the period that the structured investment product is outstanding;
  - (d) certified true copies of all material documents in relation to the structured investment product (including without limitation any guarantee, Programme agreement(s), trust deed, custodial agreements and documents creating and evidencing collateral and rights and security interests thereunder or credit enhancement arrangements, and all arrangements with Key Product Counterparties and parties providing services in respect of the product which are material to investors' interests in the structured investment product);
  - (e) the Issuer's, or in the case of a guaranteed issue, the Guarantor's, and, where applicable, any Key Product Counterparty's latest published audited consolidated financial statements and any more recently published interim and quarterly financial statements;
  - (f) a certified true copy of the signed expert consent letter regarding the issue of a statement purporting to be made by such expert in the offering document; and
  - (g) all other documents which the Issuer considers materially relevant to the structured investment product.

## Risk management

43. A summary of the risk management policies and controls implemented by the Issuer with a view to ensuring compliance with its obligations under the terms of the structured investment product, the applicable requirements in the Handbook and its regulatory obligations pursuant to the Handbook.

## Waivers

44. Details of any waivers of any requirements under this Code or the Handbook or any applicable law, regulation or rule which have been obtained in respect of the structured investment product, the Issuer, the Guarantor, any Key Product Counterparty, any



trustee/custodian or a Product Arranger (as the case may be).

### **General information**

45. The date of issue of the offering document.
46. Where a structured investment product is issued as part of a Programme and the Issuer chooses to use multiple documents which together constitute the offering document for a structured investment product, a statement in each such document listing all documents which together comprise the offering document for that product and providing details of where all such documents can be obtained at reasonable cost.



## Appendix D

### Advertising guidelines applicable to unlisted structured investment products

#### Application of advertising guidelines

These Advertising Guidelines are applicable to advertisements for unlisted structured investment products.

The guidelines outline the expected standard of disclosure and presentation of advertisements for unlisted structured investment products. These guidelines are not intended to be exhaustive.

All persons or entities issuing advertisements for unlisted structured investment products (including, for the avoidance of doubt, licensed and registered persons acting as intermediaries~~distributors~~ of the structured investment product) are required to comply with these guidelines.

For purposes of these guidelines, advertisements do not include materials which market the expertise or branding of or services offered by an Issuer without reference to any particular product.

#### General

Pursuant to the SFO, the Commission may at any time review its authorization of an advertisement and may modify, add to or withdraw any of the conditions of such authorization, or withdraw the authorization, as it considers appropriate.

Nothing in these guidelines undermines the prohibition under section 103 of the SFO, or compromises or prejudices any of the powers of the Commission under the SFO.

These guidelines do not have the force of law and shall not be interpreted in any manner which overrides the provisions of any law, codes or other regulatory requirements.



## Disclosure and presentation of advertisements

### General principles

1. Advertisements for a structured investment product shall:

- (a) not be false, biased, misleading or deceptive;
- (b) be clear, fair and present a balanced picture of the structured investment product with adequate and prominent risk disclosures; and
- (c) contain information that is timely and consistent with the offering document.

- Notes:
- (1) *Key features and risks, including, where appropriate, a description of any derivative component in the context of the risk and return of the structured investment product, shall be presented for investors upfront and presented prominently.*
  - (2) *Presentation of benefits and returns shall not be disproportionately more prominent than, or be made without mentioning, the risks of the structured investment product. Use of different font sizes for the positive and negative features of or statements regarding a structured investment product shall be avoided. An advertisement shall not give the impression that an investor could profit without risk.*
  - (3) *Terms like “guaranteed” shall not be used unless what is being guaranteed and the extent of the guarantee are accurately and clearly described. If a guarantee is subject to limitations or conditions, it would not be appropriate to use the word “guaranteed” generally to describe the structured investment product.*
  - (4) *Other terms which may convey an impression of low risk or a risk-free investment such as “principal-protected”, “secure”, “safe”, “warranty”, “deposit”, “likely” and “promise” shall generally not be used unless the issuer of the advertisement can demonstrate that such use is fair and not misleading.*
  - (5) *Advertisements shall not carry any slogan that is exaggerated or unwarranted or is inconsistent with or unrelated to the nature and risk and return profile of the structured investment product.*
  - (6) *Presentation of cumulative returns in advertisements is generally discouraged unless the issuer of the advertisement can demonstrate that such presentation is fair and not misleading.*
  - (7) *Advertisements shall not contain any information in respect of a structured investment product that is not contained in its offering document.*
2. Advertisements shall not refer to structured investment products for which no issue of offering document has been authorized by the SFC.



3. Advertisements shall take into account, and be reflective of, the knowledge and the level of comprehension which the investing public could reasonably be expected to have.

### **Language and graphics**

4. Advertisements shall be visually reader-friendly and information shall not be densely-packed.
5. Advertisements shall be written in plain language so that investors can understand them. Use of technical jargon or complex sentences shall be avoided.
6. Where comparative information is presented, the comparison shall be meaningful and presented in a fair, balanced and unbiased way. The source of the information used for the comparison shall be specified and the key facts and assumptions used to make the comparison shall be included.
7. An advertisement shall not contain language, artwork or graphics that is inaccurate or inconsistent with the offering document for the relevant structured investment product.
8. Advertisements shall not be disguised. For example, where advertisements are included in a newspaper, the advertisement shall not give the appearance of being editorial comment.

*Note: Where any of the Issuer's affiliates or any other party connected with the Issuer sponsors or participates in any activities or produces any materials promoting or discussing the structured investment product, there shall be clear disclosure of such party's interests and its relationship with the Issuer.*

9. Any commentary in an advertisement regarding a structured investment product shall be reasonable and shall be made by a person who is competent to form a valid and objective opinion on the relevant matter.
10. Where visual images are used in advertisements, the issuer of the advertisement shall satisfy itself that the visual images accurately portray the relevant structured investment product and are not misleading. Visual images should not divert or mislead investors' focus from the proper consideration of the structured investment product.
11. An advertisement shall not seek to denigrate competitors of a product in such a way as might lower the reputation of the industry, or use language or artwork that would be considered by a reasonable person to be in poor taste.

### **Warning statements/Notes**

12. If an advertisement or where applicable, a structured investment product or the issue of its offering document is described as having been authorized by the Commission, a statement that authorization does not imply official recommendation as set out in the Overarching Principles Section of the Handbook or to the like effect must be stated in the advertisement.
13. Advertisements shall contain warning statements/notes to the effect that:



- (a) investors must read the offering document for further details including the risk factors;
- (b) investors should not invest in the structured investment product based on the advertisement alone;
- (c) the structured investment product is unlisted and, where applicable, that there may not be an active or liquid secondary market;
- (d) the maximum loss that an investor may suffer is highlighted;
- (e) the investment is subject to the credit and insolvency risks of the Issuer, the Guarantor and/or other identified counterparties (as the case may be);
- (f) investing in the structured investment product is not the same as investing in its reference assets;
- (g) where applicable, investors may, at settlement, receive physical delivery of reference asset(s);
- (h) where applicable, the structured investment product is not principal-protected;
- (i) where applicable, the investment may be terminated early by the Issuer; ~~and~~
- (j) where applicable, the structured investment product is not collateralised; ~~;~~
- (k) the product is a structured investment product involving derivatives;
- (l) the structured investment product is not covered by the Investor Compensation Fund;
- (m) where the name of the structured investment product contains the word “deposit”, the deposit is a structured investment product which is not a protected deposit, that it is not protected by the Deposit Protection Scheme and that it is not the same as and should not be treated as a substitute for a term deposit; ~~and~~
- (n) in the case of a collateralised structured investment product, the priority of claims of investors to the proceeds of realisation of the collateral.

14. Warning statements and footnotes shall be clear and legible and shall not be presented in a style, font size or position which reduces their impact.

### **Historical performance of reference assets**

15. Advertisements may only contain information on the historical performance of the reference assets to which a structured investment product is linked if the information is relevant and conducive to investors’ understanding of the structured investment product. Such information shall not be the main focus of the advertisement.

*Note: Where the reference assets are listed securities and if historical share price information is set out in an advertisement, the period covered shall be **at least 5 but not more than 6 years, or a period equal to the maximum tenor of the***





*~~structured product, whichever is the longer to the latest practicable date~~, save for cases where the reference assets have been listed for less than 5 years, in which case the period should be from the date of listing.*

16. All performance information, including awards and rankings, shall be referenced to the relevant sources and dated. Rankings and awards may be quoted from any recognised, published independent source. For peer group comparisons, only one source shall be used and a clear description of the peer group shall be included in the advertisement.
17. No forecast of the structured investment product's performance may be presented.
18. Where provided, information on past performance of a reference asset shall be up to the latest practicable date before the issue of the relevant advertisement, and will normally be expected to be no more than 7 days old.

### **Examples and presentation**

19. Hypothetical examples are permitted for the purpose of explaining how a structured investment product works. Any such examples must be fair, balanced and commercially realistic. They must also include the worst-case scenario. They must be accompanied by a statement to the effect that the examples used are for illustrative purposes only and that the actual performance of the product may differ from the examples shown.
20. An issuer of advertisement may only present an annualised rate of ~~expected~~ return or potential return of a structured investment product if:
  - (a) all the assumptions underpinning the calculation are stated;
  - (b) it is accompanied by a prominent statement that the annualised rate of return is hypothetical and is not the actual return; and
  - (c) the ~~expected~~ actual return (or potential return) and the annualised return (or potential return) are presented side by side.
21. If graphs are used, they must be clearly presented without distortion. If different sets of data are plotted on the same graph for comparison purposes, the same axes shall be used. Periods/tenors for comparison shall be consistent.
22. If non-US\$/HK\$-denominated returns are shown, the advertisement shall, in addition, either:
  - (a) show the same returns in US\$/HK\$ with an explanation of the exchange rate used as the basis for the calculation; or
  - (b) include a statement to the effect that *"The investment returns are denominated in [foreign currency]. US/HK dollar-based investors are therefore exposed to fluctuations in the US/HK dollar / [foreign currency] exchange rate."*

### **Presentation of credit ratings**

23. Where a credit rating of a structured investment product, the Issuer of such structured investment product, any reference asset or any collateral is given in an advertisement, it shall be accompanied by:



- (a) the source of the credit rating, which must be a rating agency of international standing and reputation acceptable to the Commission;
- (b) either an explanation of what the credit rating means, including the class and/or type of rating and the specific entity or obligation rated, or a cross-reference to an explanation of what it means located in the offering document; and
- (c) an appropriate warning to the effect that the credit rating (i) is not a recommendation, (ii) is not necessarily an indication of liquidity or volatility, and (iii) may be downgraded if the credit quality of the relevant entity or asset or obligation declines.

*Note: Where a negative outlook has been assigned, such fact shall be disclosed.*

### **Radio, television, cinema or other time-limiting advertisements / broadcasts**

24. The following requirements apply to advertisements where the audience has no control over the time taken for the information in the advertisement to be delivered (e.g. radio, television, cinema broadcasts, etc.):
- (a) For audio advertisements with no visual display, warning statements referred to in paragraph 13 of these guidelines shall be audibly and clearly read out in a voice-over at the end of each broadcast.
  - (b) For visual advertisements, warning statements referred to in paragraph 13 of these guidelines and the full name of the issuer of the advertisement shall be displayed for such time as to be sufficiently prominent to allow the viewer to read the entire text of the disclosure with reasonable ease.
  - (c) Advertisements shall not be disguised as authoritative reports, and shall be presented with courtesy and good taste. Disturbing or annoying materials such as blatant sound effects, persistent repetition, or words and phrases implying emergency shall be avoided.

### **Responsibility of the issuer of an advertisement**

25. Issuers of advertisements are responsible for the contents of their advertisements and the monitoring of their publication or distribution. Under no circumstances may an issuer disclaim its liabilities in respect of the accuracy of the contents of its advertisements. Where information in the advertisement is sourced externally and disclosed as such, such issuer shall not include the information in an advertisement unless the issuer has a reasonable belief that such information is accurate, complete and up-to-date.
26. Issuers of advertisements shall keep adequate records of the advertisements issued, either in actual form or by way of a copy of the final proof, and the relevant supporting documents for substantiation of information presented therein. Such records shall be retained for at least 3 years from the latest date of publication/distribution of an advertisement and shall be made available to the Commission upon request.



27. The full name of the issuer of the advertisement, the Issuer and each Product Arranger for the relevant structured investment product(s) and their regulatory status in Hong Kong (or the lack thereof) shall be disclosed in the advertisement.